

Board of Directors Regular Board Meeting March 7, 2022 | 10:00 a.m.

NOTICE IS HEREBY GIVEN that the members of the Denton County Transportation Authority (DCTA) Board of Directors will hold a Regular Meeting on March 7, 2022 at 10:00 a.m. at the DCTA Administrative Offices located at 1955 Lakeway Drive, Suite 260, Lewisville, Texas 75057 and by Zoom Video Conference at which time the following agenda will be discussed.

Effective September 1, 2021, the public is allowed to use the ZOOM link below to participate in a Board Meeting; however, audio-only is no longer allowed, therefore, full-video will be required when speaking to the Board. To join the meeting, please use the information below:

Please click the link below to join the webinar:

https://us06web.zoom.us/s/88556947676?pwd=QUNhdFFsWTh0S2VIb3ZFbHh4VTRxUT09

Passcode: 571704 Or One tap mobile : US: +13462487799 Or Telephone:

Dial: US: +1 346 248 7799 Webinar ID: 885 5694 7676

Passcode: 571704

As authorized by Section 551-071 of the Texas Government Code, the Board of Directors may convene into Closed Executive Session for the purpose of seeking legal advice from Legal Counsel on any item on the agenda at any time during the meeting.

CALL TO ORDER

INVOCATION

INTRODUCTIONS

PUBLIC COMMENT

This agenda item provides an opportunity for citizens to address the DCTA Board of Directors on any agenda item(s) or other matters relating to DCTA. Each speaker will be given a total of three (3) minutes to address any item(s). Anyone wishing to speak shall be courteous and cordial.

Any person who wishes to address the DCTA Board of Directors regarding any item(s) may do so by either completing a Request to Speak Card located in the DCTA Board Room prior to the meeting or if participating virtually, by utilizing the "raise hand" function ensuring when called upon your camera is turned on and your name is displayed.



Citizens that are not able to participate in-person or connect virtually to the Zoom meeting must email his or her public comment to kmorris-perkins@dcta.net no later than 3:00 pm on Friday, March 4, 2022, to ensure the comment will be read.

The Board of Directors is not permitted to take action on any subject raised by a speaker during Public Comments. However, the DCTA Board of Directors may have the item placed on a future agenda for action; refer the item to the DCTA Administration for further study or action; briefly state existing DCTA policy; or provide a brief statement of factual information in response to the inquiry.

CONSENT AGENDA

1. Consider Approval of Regular Meeting Minutes dated December 2, 2021 and January 27, 2022

(packet pages 7-28)

Action Item

Backup Information Exhibit 1: December 2, 2021 Minutes

Exhibit 2: January 27, 2022 Minutes

2. Consider Approval of Monthly Financial Statements for January 2022

(packet pages 29-36)

Action Item

Backup Information: Memo

Exhibit 1.1: Monthly Financial Statements – January 2022 Exhibit 1.2: Capital Projects Budget Report – January 2022

REGULAR AGENDA

1. Presentation of Audit Report for Fiscal Year End September 30, 2021 by Plante Moran and Consider Approval of the FY2021 Financial Statements and Supplemental Information

(packet pages 37-121)

Action Item

Presenters: Amber Karkauskas, Controller/AVP of Finance

Keith Szymanski, Senior Manager – Plante Moran

Backup Information: Memo

Exhibit 1: FY2021 Annual Comprehensive Financial Report (ACFR)

Exhibit 2: FY2021 Single Audit Report

Exhibit 3: Plante Moran's Report to the Board of Directors

2. Mobility Services Update

(packet pages 122-123)

Discussion Item

Presenter: Javier Trilla, AVP of Innovation & Information Technology



3. Discuss and Consider Authorizing the CEO to Negotiate and Enter into an Agreement with River North Transit LLC (Via) for Comprehensive Operations Analysis Services

(packet pages 124-134)

Action Item

Presenter: Javier Trilla, AVP of Innovation & Information Technology

Backup Information: Memo

Exhibit 1: DCTA Via Consulting Agreement

4. Consider Approval of Resolution R22-02 Approving Budget Revision 2022-07

(packet pages 135-145)

Action Item

Presenter: Amanda Riddle, Senior Manager of Budget

Backup Information: Memo

Exhibit 1: Resolution R22-02 with the following Exhibits:

"A": Budget Revision 2022-07

"B": Change in Net Position (DCTA Only)

"B-1": Change in Net Position (DCTA & NTMC Combined)

Exhibit 2: Year-to-Date FY22 Budget Revisions

5. Review and Discuss Project Management Office (PMO) Activities with Accenture, LLP

(packet pages 146-148)

Discussion Item

Presenter: Chris Newport, Accenture, LLP

Backup Information: Memo

Exhibit 1: Accenture PMO Status Report

6. Consider Approval of Amendment to Task Order with River North Transit LLC (Via) Regarding GoZone Customer Support Services

(packet pages 149-151)

Action Item

Presenter: Javier Trilla, AVP of Innovation & Information Technology

Backup Information Memo

Exhibit 1: DCTA Amendment #4 - Full Time Customer Support (Mar 2022 - Sept

2022)

7. Presentation and Discussion of Approach to Enhance Value of the A-train

(packet page 152)

Discussion Item

Presenter: Paul Cristina, Deputy CEO

Backup Information: Memo

8. Provide Update on Burns Property Lease

(packet page 153)

Discussion Item

Presenter: Paul Cristina, Deputy CEO



9. Staff Briefing on Recent Inclement Weather Response and Recovery

(packet pages 154-155)

Discussion Item

Presenter: Brittney Farr, Director of Government Relations

Backup Information: Memo

10. Discuss Local and Regional Transportation Updates and Legislative Issues

(packet pages N/A)

Discussion Item

Presenters: Cesar Molina, Chair

Dianne Costa, Board Secretary

Raymond Suarez, CEO

11. Consider a Second Amended and Restated Employment Agreement Between Denton County Transportation Authority (DCTA) and the Chief Executive Officer (CEO)

(packet page 156)

Action Item

Backup Information: Memo

INFORMATIONAL REPORTS

1. Monthly Financial Reports

(packet pages 157-165)

Backup Information: Memo 1: Monthly Sales Tax Receipts

Exhibit 1: FY22 Monthly Sales Tax Report

Memo 2: Monthly Mobility-as-a-Service Update

Memo 3: Budget Information

Exhibit 3: Proposed FY23 Budget Calendar

2. Monthly Ridership Reports

(packet pages 166-173)

Backup Information: Memo

Exhibit 1: Ridership by Mode – January 2022

Exhibit 2: A-train Year-Over-Year Ridership Comparison Exhibit 3: Connect and GoZone Ridership by Month and Year

Exhibit 4: Fixed-Route Ridership – January 2022

Exhibit 5: Connect Ridership Year-Over-Year by Month Exhibit 6: UNT Ridership Year-Over-Year by Month

3. Request for Proposals (RFP) 22-02 State Legislative Consultant

(packet page 174)



4. Community Advisory Committee Recap Report

(packet pages 175-184)

Backup Information: Memo

Exhibit 1: Community Advisory Committee Recap Report

5. Request for Proposals (RFP) 22-03 Unarmed Uniformed Security Guard Services at Bus Operations Facility and Downtown Denton Transit Center (DDTC)

(packet page 185)

Backup Information: Memo

6. Memorandum of Understanding (MOU) with Dallas Area Rapid Transit (DART) and Trinity Metro for Rail Liability Insurance Administration

(packet page 186)

Backup Information: Memo

7. Extension of 17-03 On-Demand Rideshare Services and 17-27 On-Call Taxi and Non-emergency Transportation Services Contracts

(packet pages 187-188)

Back up Information: Memo

FUTURE AGENDA ITEMS AND BOARD MEMBER REQUESTS

Staff will discuss proposed future agenda items. Board members may request an informational item or action item to be added to the next Board meeting agenda.

Next Board Meeting Date: March 24, 2022

REPORT ON ITEMS OF COMMUNITY INTEREST

Pursuant to Texas Government Section 551.0415 the Board of Directors may report on following items: (1) expression of thanks, congratulations, or condolences; (2) information about holiday schedules; (3) recognition of individuals; (4) reminders about upcoming DCTA and Member City events; (5) information about community events; and (6) announcements involving imminent threat to public health and safety.

CONVENE EXECUTIVE SESSION

The Board may convene the Regular Board Meeting into Closed Executive Session for the following:

The Board of Directors will convene into Closed Executive Session pursuant to Section 551.074 of the Texas Government Code, Personnel Matters, to deliberate the evaluation, duties, and employment of the Chief Executive Officer.

RECONVENE OPEN SESSION

Reconvene and Take Necessary Action on Items Discussed during Executive Session.

ADJOURN



Board Members:

Cesar Molina, Denton County Seat 1, *Chair*TJ Gilmore, Lewisville, *Vice-Chair*Dianne Costa, Highland Village, *Secretary*Alison Maguire, Denton
Andy Eads, Denton County Seat 2

Alternates

Jody Gonzalez, Denton County Seat 1 Kristin Green, Lewisville Pat Smith, Denton Paul Stevens, Highland Village Vacant, Denton County Seat 2

Non-Voting Board Members:

Dennie Franklin, Frisco Mark Miller, Flower Mound Joe Perez, The Colony Connie White, Small Cities Tom Winterburn, Corinth Vacant, Little Elm

Staff Liaison: Raymond Suarez, CEO

This notice was posted on March 1, 2022 by 5pm.

Kisha Morris-Perkins

Executive Assistant | Board Process Manager

KrinaRWPerkmos



Board of Directors Regular Meeting Minutes December 2, 2021 | 10:00 a.m.

The Board of Directors of the Denton County Transportation Authority (DCTA) convened the Regular Meeting of the Board of Directors with Chair Cesar Molina presiding on December 2, 2021 at 10:00am located at the DCTA Administrative Offices.

Voting Members

Chair Cesar Molina, Denton County
Vice-Chair TJ Gilmore, City of Lewisville
Secretary Sam Burke, Denton County
Board Member Dianne Costa, City of Highland Village
Board Member Alison Maguire, City of Denton

Alternates

Board Member Jody Gonzalez, Denton County Board Member Kristin Green, City of Lewisville Board Member Pat Smith, City of Denton Board Member Paul Stevens, City of Highland Village

Non-Voting Members

Board Member Tom Winterburn, City of Corinth Board Member Dennie Franklin, City of Frisco Board Member Connie White, Small Cities Board Member Mark Miller, City of Flower Mound Board Member Joe Perez, City of The Colony

Legal Counsel

Joe Gorfida, NJDHS

DCTA CEO

Raymond Suarez

CALL TO ORDER

Chair Molina called the meeting to order at 10:02am. All voting Board Members were present in-person. The following alternates were in-person: Jody Gonzalez, Pat Smith and Paul Stevens. The following alternate and non-voting board members participated virtually: Kristin Green Dennie Franklin, Mark Miller, Joe Perez, Connie White and Tom Winterburn.

Note: The Board recessed and reconvened at the following times:

- Recessed at 10:20am due to technical issues and reconvened at 10:27am.
- Recessed at 11:24am due to technical issues and reconvened at 11:43am.
- Recessed at 2:18pm (lunch) and reconvened at 2:44pm.



• Convened into Executive Session at 2:45pm to consult with Legal Counsel on Agenda Item 3. The Board reconvened into Open Session at 3:07pm with no action taken.

INVOCATION

Alternate Board Member Pat Smith provided the invocation.

INTRODUCTIONS

Chair Molina and Board Member Costa thanked Charlotte Wilcox for her service as an Alternate Board Member representing the City of Highland Village and welcomed Paul Stevens as the newly appointed Alternate Board Member for the City of Highland Village. CEO Raymond Suarez also introduced Paul Cristina and DCTA's Deputy CEO.

PUBLIC COMMENT

The following individuals addressed the Board during this time:

Joshua Hatton – Verbal Comments (virtual)
Eva Grecco – Verbal Comments (virtual)
Eric Pruett – Written Comments (email)

CONSENT AGENDA

1. Consider Approval of Monthly Financial Statements for October 2021

(packet pages 7-13)

Action Item

Backup Information Memo

Exhibit 1(a): Monthly Financial Statements – October 2021 Exhibit 1(b): Capital Projects Budget Report – October 2021

2. Consider Approval of October 28, 2021 Regular Meeting Minutes

(packet pages 14-22)

Action Item

Backup Information: Exhibit 1: October 28, 2021 Regular Meeting Minutes

Motion by Vice-Chair Gilmore with a second by Board Member Maguire to approve as presented. Motion passes 5-0.

REGULAR AGENDA

1. Consider Approval of Resolution R21-09 approving Budget Revision 2022-02 for Sales Tax associated with the Castle Hills annexation into the City of Lewisville

(packet pages 23-31)

Action Item

Presenters: Marisa Perry, Chief Financial Officer/Vice President of Finance

Backup Information: Memo

Exhibit 1: Resolution R21-09 with the following exhibits:



"A": Budget Revision 2022-02 "B": Change in Net Position

Exhibit 2: Year to Date FY22 Budget Revisions

Marisa Perry, CFO/VP of Finance presented the staff report highlighting the following:

- Projected increase of \$575,093 with annexation of Castle Hills into City of Lewisville
- GoZone extension approved in September 2021 into Castle Hills Service Area (\$150,094 Cost, \$1565 Passenger Revenues)
- Projections were provided to the City of Lewisville

Board discussion regarding Castle Hills projections from the State Comptroller's Office.

Motion by Board Member Costa with a second by Board Member Maguire to approve as presented. Motion passes 5-0.

2. GoZone Update

(packet pages 32-33)

Discussion Item

Presenters: Javier Trilla, AVP of Innovation & Information Technology

Chris Newport, Accenture

Backup Information: Memo

Javier Trilla, AVP of Innovation and Information Technology, presented the staff report highlighting the following:

- Noteworthy Statistics (October 30,922 rides and November 27,369 passenger rides as of November 22, 2021)
- Operational Challenges (High demand with supply challenges = higher wait times)
- GoZone Consolidated Dashboard

Board discussion regarding comparisons to 2019 ridership, breakout of multiple rider requests (3 or more people), COVID-19 related ridership, clarification of "unaccepted proposals" definition, the Board receiving a better visual of the "heat map", additional Via fleet vehicles and how many are wheelchair accessible and the ability to request a wheelchair accessible van through the Via app.

No Board action required at this time.

3. Consider Service Modifications Effective December 5, 2021 and Proposed Recommendations (packet pages 34-89)

Action Item

Presenters: Chris Newport, Accenture

Raymond Suarez, CEO

Ari Luks, Via Alex Lavoie, Via Laney Cloud, Via



Exhibit 1: Multimodal System Assessment

CEO Raymond Suarez introduced this item and provided information as relates to consideration of the proposed service modifications and subsequently considering approval of a Budget Revision Resolution in Regular Agenda Item 4. With that being said, Mr. Suarez turned the presentation over to Chris Newport from Accenture and Ari Luks, Alex Lavoie and Laney Cloud; representatives from Via.

Chris Newport, Ari Luks and Alex Lavoie presented highlighting the following information:

- Service Assessment Recap (Consolidate, Analyze and Recommend)
- Service Assessment Current State Summary
- Monthly Service Assessment Framework
- GoZone Weekly Ridership Trend
- September and October Ridership: GoZone by Daily Peak Period
- September and October Ridership: GoZone and Connect
- September vs October Denton/Lewisville Connect Ridership
- September and October Connect Total Monthly Ridership by Daily Peak Period
- Boardings per Revenue Hour by Daily Peak Period
- Connect Route Indicator Assessment Summary
- Proposed Connect Alternative Service Considerations
- GoZone Utilization and Connect Coverage Overlap Weekdays Denton
- GoZone Utilization and Connect Coverage Overlap Weekdays Lewisville/Highland Village
- Distribution of GoZone rides by Distance (last 2 months)
- Key Takeaways (Ridership, Efficiency, Service Enhancement through Collaboration)
- Designing DCTA Integrated Multi-Modal Service (Re-design fixed route network, configure GoZone app to highlight hubs and increase fixed route awareness, adjust GoZone pricing for efficiency and to driver rider behavior, and deploy Intermodal Technology to optimize modes
- Proposed Fixed Route Network Changes Denton
- Proposed Fixed Route Network Changes Lewisville
- Proposed Connect Route Schedules
- Proposed Denton Connect and existing University Service
- Proposed Lewisville Connect Service Profile
- GoZone Map Highlight Fixed Route Hubs
- Pricing Potential Goals and Impact
- Potential Pricing Structures and How They Might Work (Hub discounts, Distance Based, Combination of Hubs/Discounts)
- Intermodal Trip Planning
- Designing DCTA Integrated Multi-Modal Service to be brought back for Board consideration in June 2022, as part of a Comprehensive Service Analysis

Recommendation Summary

- 1. Discuss and Approve Revised Connect Routes
- 2. Discuss and Approve Revised Connect Schedules
- 3. Discuss and Approve Not-To-Exceed Budget Amendment Options (Agenda Item RO4)



| Budget Revision Description | R04 Option 1: December 2021 – March 2022 | R04 Option 2: December 2021 – September |
|--------------------------------|---|---|
| | (Current Service Levels) | 2022 (Revised Service Levels) |
| Net Position Impact, | (\$403,430) | (\$727,841) |
| Lewisville Connect | | |
| Net Position Impact, | (\$345,224) | (\$1,019,290) |
| Denton Connect | | |
| Net Position Impact, | (\$748,654) | (\$1,747,131) |
| Total | | |

- September and October Boardings by Timepoint: DC1
- September and October Boardings by Timepoint: DC2
- September and October Boardings by Timepoint: DC3
- September and October Boardings by Timepoint: DC4
- September and October Boardings by Timepoint: DC6
- September and October Boardings by Timepoint: DC7
- September and October Boardings by Timepoint: LC 21
- September and October Boardings by Timepoint: LC22
- GoZone Intensity of Pick-ups and Drop-offs Saturdays Denton
- GoZone Intensity of Pick-ups and Drop-offs Saturdays Lewisville/Highland Village
- Equity Considerations with Connect and GoZone Denton
- Equity Considerations with Connect and GoZone Lewisville/Highland Village
- Fixed Route Changes: DC1 (Discontinued)
- Fixed Route Changes: DC2
- Fixed Route Changes: DC3
- Fixed Route Changes: DC4
- Fixed Route Changes: DC5 (new)
- Fixed Route Changes: DC6
- Fixed Route Changes: DC7
- Fixed Route Changes: LC21
- Fixed Route Changes: LC22

Motion by Secretary Burke with a second by Board Member Costa to adopt Option #2 for Denton Connect only from December 24, 2021 through September 2022 (end of Fiscal Year 2022). After further discussion of the motion, the motion was amended to include the base rate in Lewisville/Highland Village will be the same as the base rate in Denton and that the Lewisville/Highland Village users will not be charged any additional distance charges whether or not these are implemented in Denton. Motion passes 5-0.

Motion by Vice-Chair Gilmore with a second by Board Member Costa to extend routes LC 21 and LC22 through December 24, 2021 for ridership notification purposes. Motion passes 5-0.

Motion by Board Member Maguire with a second by Vice-Chair Gilmore to extend DC Route 1 through December 24, 2021. Motion passes 5-0.



4. Consider Approval of Resolution R21-10 approving Budget Revision 2022-03 for Fixed Route Service Extension

(packet pages 90-105)

Action Item

Presenter: Marisa Perry, Chief Financial Officer/Vice President of Finance

Backup Information: Memo

Exhibit 1: Resolution R21-10 with the following exhibits:

"A": Option 1 - Budget Revision 2022-03A

"B": Option 1 – Change in Net Position (DCTA Only)

"B-1": Option 1 – Change in Net Position (DCTA & NTMC Combined)

"C": Option 2 - Budget Revision 2022-03B

"D": Option 2 – Change in Net Position (DCTA Only)

"D-1": Option 2 – Change in Net Position (DCTA & NTMC Combined)

Marisa Perry, CFO/VP of Finance, presented the staff report highlighting the following: She noted that the modification with extending Lewisville routes LC 21 and LC22 through December 24, 2021 was not included in the options presented and therefore, staff will determine if a budget revision is needed during the January Board Meeting.

Budget Revision 2022-03A (Option 1)

- Extends Lewisville and Denton Fixed Route Service through March 2022
- Based on Current Service Levels
- Total Budget Impact Lewisville FR \$403,430
- Total Budget Impact Denton FR \$345,224

Budget Revision 2022-03B (Option 2)

- Extends Lewisville and Denton Fixed Route Service through September 2022
- Based on Modified Service Levels
- Total Budget Impact Lewisville FR \$727,841
- Total Budget Impact Denton FR \$1,019,290

Motion by Board Member Maguire with a second by Board Member Costa to approve Option 2, Budget Revision 2022-03B, as presented. Motion passes 5-0.

5. Discussion Regarding Dallas Area Rapid Transit (DART) Lease Agreement for use of Denton County Transportation Authority (DCTA) Operations and Maintenance Facility

(packet page 106)

Discussion Item

Presenters: Paul Cristina, Deputy CEO



Raymond Suarez, CEO

Backup Information: Memo

Paul Cristina, Deputy CEO, presented the staff report highlighting the following:

- DCTA/DART Joint Rail Operations Facility Timeline (November 202 January 2022)
- ILA Phases and Milestones (1-3)
- Appraisal Methodology and Value (Land, Facility, Railroad & Support Systems)
 (Contracted with Stateside Real Estate for appraisal and drafting of the lease agreement.
 Stateside subcontracted with Lowery Property Advisors (provides appraisals for rail operators including TRE, DART and Trinity Metro) to perform the work.
- Lease Rate and Expense Calculation: Years 1-2 (Facility & Rail Lease/Operating Expense)

Board discussion regarding being on track to see a resolved document in January 2022.

No Board action required at this time.

6. Discussion regarding Project Management Office (PMO) Activities Related to Task Order #2 with Accenture, LLP

Discussion Item

(packet pages 107-109)

Presenter: Chris Newport, Accenture

Backup Information: Memo

Exhibit 1: PMO Progress Report

Chris Newport, Accenture, provided the Board with an update highlighting the following:

- GoZone Update
- ERP Sourcing
- Trinity Metro

Board discussion regarding the GoZone Dashboard going "live" and the GoZone/GoPass integration and clarification.

No Board action required at this time.

7. Discuss Task Order #3 with Accenture for Transformation Initiative Priority Project Implementation Services

(packet pages 110-116)

Discussion Item

Presenters: Raymond Suarez, CEO

Chris Newport, Accenture

Backup Information: Memo

Exhibit 1: DCTA Transformation Initiative Roadmap

CEO Raymond Suarez briefly presented to the Board a proposed Task Order #3 with Accenture (for Board approval in January 2022) to include the following scope of work:



- Agency Strategic Planning, including an off-site workshop
- Bus Parts Management and Maintenance
- ERP alternative solution selection advisory services
- IT Project Management capability implementation
- Touchless and digital fare experience design and implementation

No Board action required at this time.

8. Discuss and Provide Direction Regarding Future Board Strategic Workshop

(packet page N/A)

Discussion Item

Presenters: Raymond Suarez, CEO

Chris Newport, Accenture

Backup Information: N/A

CEO Raymond Suarez and Chris Newport from Accenture discussed the potential structure for a Full Day Board Workshop highlighting the following:

- Review/Recap Session
- Long Range Financial Planning
- Strategic Initiatives
- Transformation Roadmap
- Survey Questions

Note: Staff will not seek formal action during this workshop.

It was the consensus of the Board to conduct the Board Workshop on Friday, February 18, 2022, gathering at 8am and beginning the agenda at 8:30am. Location will be determined at a later date.

9. Federal Legislative Update

(packet pages 117-119)

Discussion Item

Presenters: Chris Giglio, Capital Edge

Brittney Farr, Director of Government Relations

Backup Information: Memo

Chris Giglio from Capital Edge provided the update on the Infrastructure Investment and Jobs Act highlighting the following:

- \$1.2 trillion for traditional infrastructure
- \$550 billion in new spending
- New funding either competitive grant programs or state formulas
- Crafted by bipartisan group of Senators
- Includes 5-year reauthorization of Department of Transportation programs
- Signed into law November 15, 2021



- How much does DCTA get? (compete for grants for electric buses, railroad grade crossings, rail vehicle replacement, \$61 million federal transit formula grants over next 5 years; current funding is approximately \$9 million per year)
- When can DCTA get it? (formula funds will start flowing when a budget is approved, competitive grants as Department of Transportation announces)
- What kind of projects will be priorities? (safety, modernization, climate and equity)
- Build Back Better (\$1.75 trillion "human" infrastructure plan, childcare, universal Pre-K, Medicare Expansion, Affordable Housing, \$10 billion for FTA-HUD Competitive Grant, 30% Tax Credit for electric bus purchases, House approved last month; changes expected in Senate)
- Mask mandates extended until March 2022

No Board action required at this time.

10. Discuss Local and Regional Transportation Updates & Legislative Issues

(packet pages N/A)

Discussion Item

Presenters: Cesar Molina, Chair

Director Dianne Costa Raymond Suarez, CEO

Board Member Costa provided an update from the Regional Transportation Council (RTC) and CEO Raymond Suarez advised the Board that he and the Chair attended the APTA Conference in Orlando, Florida in which DCTA received the AdWheel Grand Award, information regarding Castle Hills Annexation and the proposed City of Corinth Rail.

INFORMATIONAL REPORTS

1. Monthly Financial Reports

(packet pages 120-134)

Backup Information: Memo 1: Monthly Sales Tax Receipts

Exhibit 1: FY21 Monthly Sales Tax Report

Memo 2: Monthly Mobility-as-a-Service Update

Memo 3: Budget Information

Exhibit 3(a): Year to Date FY21 Budget Revisions Exhibit 3(b): Year to Date FY22 Budget Revisions Exhibit 3(c): FY22 TRIP Funding Allocations

2. Ridership Trends & Rail Trail Utilization Report

(packet pages 135-148)

Backup Information: Memo

Exhibit 1: FY19-FY22 Total Monthly Ridership Comparison Chart: Rail Exhibit 2: FY19-FY22 Total Monthly Ridership Comparison Chart: Bus Exhibit 3: FY19-FY22 Total Monthly Ridership Comparison Chart: Access Exhibit 4: FY19-FY22 Total Monthly Ridership Comparison Chart: On-

Demand



Exhibit 5: A-train Ridership Pre and Post COVID-19 Comparison and

Trend

Exhibit 6: October 2021 Rail Trail Utilization Report

3. Social Services Agency Recap

(packet pages 149-160)

Backup Information: Memo

Exhibit 1: Social Service Agency Roundtable Recap Report

4. Community Advisory Committee Meeting Recap Report

(packet pages 161-168)

Backup Information: Memo

Exhibit 1: Community Advisory Committee Meeting Recap Report

5. Interlocal Agreement with Trinity Metro for Cooperative Purchasing

(packet pages 169-173)

Backup Information: Memo

Exhibit 1: DRAFT Interlocal Agreement with Trinity Metro Cooperative

Purchasing

6. Title VI Policy Updates Due to FTA by June 1, 2022

(packet pages 174-175)

Backup Information: Memo

No Board action required at this time regarding the Informational Reports. However, Marisa Perry, CFO/VP of Finance, advised the Board of an Exhibit on page 134 of the Monthly Financial Reports (TRiP allocation/FY21/Sales). This information will be communicated to member cities for use during the Call for Projects.

FUTURE AGENDA ITEMS AND BOARD MEMBER REQUESTS

Staff will discuss proposed future agenda items. Board members may request an informational item or action item to be added to the next Board meeting agenda.

A-train Authorization Study

Next Board Meeting Date: January 27, 2022

REPORT ON ITEMS OF COMMUNITY INTEREST

Pursuant to Texas Government Section 551.0415 the Board of Directors may report on following items: (1) expression of thanks, congratulations, or condolences; (2) information about holiday schedules; (3) recognition



of individuals; (4) reminders about upcoming DCTA and Member City events; (5) information about community events; and (6) announcements involving imminent threat to public health and safety.

- Highland Village Christmas at the Ranch Event Doubletree Ranch Saturday, December 11, 2021 from 10am until 2pm.
- Mass Transit announces 40 under 40 recognition awarded to Brittney Farr, Director of Government Relations

CONVENE EXECUTIVE SESSION

The Board may convene the Regular Board Meeting into Closed Executive Session for the following:

As Authorized by Section 551.074 of the Texas Government Code, the Board of Directors Meeting may be Convened into Closed Executive Session for the purpose of discussing the duties and evaluation of the Chief Executive Officer (CEO).

The Board convened into Executive Session at 4:44pm and reconvened into Open Session at 5:11pm.

RECONVENE OPEN SESSION

Reconvene and Take Necessary Action on Items Discussed during Executive Session.

A. Consider Amendments to CEO Employment Agreement.

The Board reconvened into Open Session at 5:12pm with no action necessary.

| ADJOURN | |
|---|---------------------|
| Chair Molina adjourned the meeting at 4:44pm. | |
| , | |
| | |
| | |
| | Cesar Molina, Chair |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| Sam Burke, Secretary | |



Board of Directors Regular Board Meeting Minutes January 27, 2022 | 10:00 a.m.

The Board of Directors of the Denton County Transportation Authority (DCTA) convened the Regular Meeting of the Board of Directors with Chair Cesar Molina presiding on January 27, 2022, at 10:00am located at the DCTA Administrative Offices.

Voting Members

Chair Cesar Molina, Denton County Vice-Chair TJ Gilmore, City of Lewisville Secretary Dianne Costa, City of Highland Village Board Member Andy Eads, Denton County Board Member Alison Maguire, City of Denton

Alternates

Board Member Jody Gonzalez, Denton County Board Member Kristin Green, City of Lewisville Board Member Pat Smith, City of Denton Board Member Paul Stevens, City of Highland Village

Non-Voting Members

Board Member Tom Winterburn, City of Corinth Board Member Dennie Franklin, City of Frisco Board Member Connie White, Small Cities Board Member Mark Miller, City of Flower Mound Board Member Joe Perez, City of The Colony

Legal Counsel

Joe Gorfida, NJDHS

DCTA CEO

Raymond Suarez

As authorized by Section 551-071 of the Texas Government Code, the Board of Directors may convene into Closed Executive Session for the purpose of seeking legal advice from Legal Counsel on any item on the agenda at any time during the meeting.

CALL TO ORDER

Chair Molina called the meeting to order at 10:03am. All voting board members and alternates were in-person. The following non-voting board members were present: Joe Perez, Tom Winterburn and Connie White.

Note: The Board recessed at 1:51pm and reconvened at 2:22pm.



INVOCATION

Dianne Costa provided the invocation.

INTRODUCTIONS

Chair Molina gave all Board Members an opportunity to introduce themselves and the cities they represent.

PUBLIC COMMENT

There were no comments received via email; however, the following individual wished to address the board via Zoom: Eva Grecco.

CONSENT AGENDA

1. Consider Regular Meeting Minutes dated December 2, 2021

(packet pages 8-18)

Action Item

Backup Information Exhibit 1: December 2, 2021 Minutes

2. Consider and Approve an Interlocal Agreement with Trinity Metro for Cooperative Purchasing (packet pages 19-23)

Action Item

Backup Information: Memo

Exhibit 1: ILA DCTA and Trinity Metro Cooperative Purchasing Agreement

3. Consider and Approve a Second Amendment to the ILA with Trinity Metro for extension of Services at Alliance

(packet pages 24-33)

Action Item

Backup Information: Memo

Exhibit 1: ILA DCTA and Trinity Metro

4. Consider Approval of a Contract with Granicus in the amount of \$77,497.80 for a term of 36 months for the Implementation of Granicus Legistar Agenda Management Software

(packet pages 34-42)

Action Item

Backup Information: Memo

Exhibit 1: Granicus Legistar Contract

Motion by Board Member Maguire with a second by Board Member Costa to approve Consent Agenda items 2 and 4. Motion passes. 5-0. Note: Consent Agenda Item 1 was removed from the agenda and will be considered at the next scheduled regular board meeting.

Consent Agenda Item 3, Consider and Approve a Second Amendment to the ILA with Trinity Metro for extension of Services at Alliance was requested by Vice-Chair Gilmore to be removed from the Consent Agenda to be discussed during the Regular Agenda.



CEO Raymond Suarez and AVP of Regulatory Compliance Athena Forrester, provided clarification of RTR funding. Motion by Vice Chair Gilmore with a second by Secretary Costa to approve as presented. Motion passes 5-0.

REGULAR AGENDA

1. Discuss and Consider Denton County Transportation Authority (DCTA) Board of Directors Election of Officers

(packet page 43)

Action Item

Presenter: Raymond Suarez, CEO

Backup Information: Memo

Motion by Board Member Maguire with a second by Board Member Eads to confirm the nomination of Board Member Costa to serve the remainder of the Board Secretary position term that was vacated due to the resignation of Sam Burke. Motion passes 5-0.

2. Presentation and Discussion of Corinth Rail Station and Transit Oriented Development

Discussion Item

(packet pages 44-45)

Presenters: Raymond Suarez, CEO

Paul Cristina, Deputy CEO

Bob Hart, City Manager – City of Corinth

Backup Information: Memo

Exhibit 1: City of Corinth Letter, November 4, 2021

City Manager Bob Hart presented highlighting the following:

- Corinth at a Glance (population, median age, median household income, median home value, education, number of businesses, available properties and trails & bike paths)
- Agora at Corinth
- Commons at Agora
- NCTC Expansion
- Wolverine Interests
- McCaslin Property
- Parkway District
- Corinth DCTA Commuter Rail Station

Board discussion regarding clarification of Wolverine parking spaces/parking garage, Denton's participation in the project, American Rescue Plan funding, redevelopment along the I35 corridor (mix of public space and educational opportunities, and the acknowledgement of having transit-oriented development conversations). City Manager Hart confirmed that the project would continue to move forward in the absence of a rail system.

3. Presentation of the FY2021 Preliminary Audit Reports from Plante Moran

(packet pages 46-95)



Discussion Item

Presenters: Amber Karkauskas, Controller/ AVP of Finance

Keith Szymanski, Senior Manager – Plante Moran

Amy Tytar, Senior – Plante Moran

Backup Information: Memo

Exhibit 1: Draft of FY2021 Annual Comprehensive Financial Report (ACFR)

Exhibit 2: Draft of FY2021 Single Audit Report

Exhibit 3: Draft of Plante Moran's Report to the Board of Directors

Amber Karkauskas, Controller/AVP Finance, introduced Plante Moran representatives Keith Szymanski and Amy Tytar who presented the report highlighting the following:

- Audit Timeline
- Deliverables
- Independent Auditor's Report
- Financial Highlights
- Report to the Board
- Single Audit Report

It was noted by Plante Moran that they will present the final reports to the Board on February 24, 2022; reviewed quarterly investment report and noted no errors or exceptions; and the National Transit Database procedure to be performed prior to the May deadline. Plante Moran complimented DCTA Finance Team and staff citing they were knowledgeable, helpful and a pleasure to work with.

Marisa Perry commented that on page 80-81 of the agenda packet, the DCTA/NTMC final schedules, supplementary budget schedule to actual budget schedule.

Board discussion regarding the "emphasis of matter" paragraph and ensuring there continues to be a strong firewall between DCTA and NTMC. Staff indicated that additional conversations would occur between staff and legal counsel regarding this topic.

The Board thanked the DCTA Finance team and staff for their great work. CEO Raymond Suarez echoed the same sentiments and thanked Amber Karkauskas, Controller/AVP of Finance, and the rest of the Finance Team for their efforts during this busy time of year.

4. Consider a Second Amended and Restated Employment Agreement Between Denton County Transportation Authority (DCTA) and the Chief Executive Officer (CEO)

(packet page 96)

Action Item

Backup Information Memo

Chair Molina read the agenda captions and indicated that the Board would convene into Executive Session at 11:02am. Voting Board Members and Alternates were invited to participate in the Executive Session.



No action taken at this time.

5. Review and Discuss Project Management Office (PMO) Activities with Accenture, LLP

(packet pages 97-99)

Discussion Item

Presenter: Chris Newport, Accenture

Backup Information: Memo

Exhibit 1: PMO Progress Report

Chris Newport, Accenture, presented to the Board highlighting the following:

• ERP update: There have been several meetings to discuss this critical initiative and the good progress that is being made. This initiative is critical as there are several activities/processes that are conducted manually throughout the agency. Staff is working to put together demonstrations as 4 vendors have responded.

6. GoZone Update

(packet pages 100-101)

Discussion Item

Presenter: Javier Trilla, AVP of Innovation & Information Technology

Backup Information: Memo

Javier Trilla, AVP of Innovation and Technology presented to the Board highlighting the following:

- GoZone Staff Dashboard (Ridership by Origin, Completed Ridership by City, Request Disposition, Average Time to Pick Up, Completed Requests per Month, Completed Requests by Day of the Week, Departure On Time)
- Castle Hills service launched successfully on January 19, 2022
- Service hour projections assumptions
- Metrics through 4 months of service
- Hours required to support current level of service

Board discussion on whether this information is available to the public and if the Board can be provided the latest month on the dashboard for review (currently lists the month of September).

7. Consider Approval of Task Order #3 with Accenture, LLP and Consider Approval of Resolution R22-01 Approving FY22 Budget Revision 2022-05

(packet pages 102-117)

Action Item

Presenter: Javier Trilla, AVP of Innovation and Technology

Chris Newport, Accenture

Backup Information: Memo

Exhibit 1: Accenture SOW Task Order 3



Exhibit 2: Resolution R22-01 with the following Exhibits:

"A": Budget Revision 2022-05

"B": Change in Net Position (DCTA Only)

"B-1": Change in Net Position (DCTA & NTMC Combined)

Exhibit 3: Year-to-Date FY22 Budget Revisions

Javier Trilla, AVP of Innovation and Technology and Chris Newport, Accenture, provided the Board with the three (3) major initiatives with Accenture.

Motion by Vice-Chair Gilmore with a second by Board Member Eads to approve the Budget Revision in the amount of \$447,000. Motion passes 5-0.

8. Discuss Amendment #4 to Via Task Order #1 for Via to Provide Customer Service for GoZone (packet pages 118-122)

Discussion Item

Presenters: Javier Trilla, AVP of Innovation and Technology

Chris Newport, Accenture

Backup Information: Memo

Exhibit 1: DCTA Rider Support Proposal

Javier Trilla, AVP of Innovation and Technology presented to the Board highlighting the following:

- GoZone Customer Service:
 - o Initially handled by NTMC Customer Service staff
 - Customer support for service hours of NTMC staff hours provided by Via by mean of Amendment #3 to Via's Task Order #1
 - Existing staff levels are not capable of handling GoZone call volumes, causing increased wait times
- Via agreed to assist DCTA's call center
 - o Timeline: From launch through March 2022 at no cost
 - Via has provided a pricing proposal to amend Task Order #1 to extend customer support until the end of FY22
- GoZone Customer Service: Via Customer Service Proposal
 - Proposed monthly fee for Via to provide GoZone customer support is \$35,000 (\$35,000 x 7 months = \$245,000)
 - Annualized support cost = \$420,000. Includes phone and email support for all GoZone service hours

Board discussion regarding existing staff, number of calls per month, wait times during peak and non-peak hours, and clarification of how customer service works currently. This item will be brought back to the Board for approval during the February 2022 Board Meeting.

9. Consider Approval of Monthly Financial Statements for November 2021 and December 2021 and Quarterly Reports for Q1 FY2022

(packet pages 123-156)

Action Item

Presenters: Marisa Perry, Chief Financial Officer/VP of Finance



Backup Information: Memo 1

Exhibit 1(a): Monthly Financial Statements – November 2021 Exhibit 1(b): Capital Projects Budget Report – November 2021

Memo 2

Exhibit 2(a): Monthly Financial Statements – December 2021 Exhibit 2(b): Capital Projects Budget Report – December 2021

Memo 3

Exhibit 3(a): Quarterly Investment Report Q1 FY2022

Memo 4: Quarterly Grants Report Q1 FY2022

Marisa Perry, CFO/VP of Finance provided the report highlighting the following:

- Investment Report: Account Summary Beginning values as of September 30, 2022, and Ending Values as of December 31, 2021.
- Investment Report: Allocation by Security Type
- Constant Maturity Treasury
- Grant Activities: Denton/Lewisville UZA, Bus and Bus Facilities (5307), Fixed Guideway, STP-MM/STP-Flex, CARES Act Relief Funding, ARP Act Relief Funding, Congestion Mitigation & Air Quality, Consolidated Rail Infrastructure and Safety Improvements (CRISI), Transit Oriented Development, Bus and Bus Facilities (5339b)

Note: Capital Projects Budget Report (page 136) – Changed format to include the TRiP amounts of the TRiP program that have already been utilized in the previous Fiscal Year to show what amount is left that has not been paid out.

Board discussion regarding higher-than-normal anticipated ridership and less than anticipated shared rides. Board request, after 6 months of the contract (March 2022), a summary of Via's performance versus what was promised in the contract (i.e., ridership, total cost, etc.). Specifically, a "reset baseline" compared to the contract.

Motion by Secretary Costa with a second by Board Member Maguire to approve as presented. Motion passes 5-0.

10. Discuss and Consider Approval of Dallas Area Rapid Transit (DART) Short Term Lease Agreement for use of Denton County Transportation Authority (DCTA) Operations and Maintenance Facility

(packet pages 157-222)

Action Item

Presenters: Paul Cristina, Deputy CEO

Raymond Suarez, CEO

Backup Information: Memo

Exhibit 1: Lease Rate and Operating Expense Calculation and DART

Counterproposal

Exhibit 2: DCTA – DART Interlocal Agreement

Exhibit 3: Draft Lease Agreement (Currently Under Review by DART)



Paul Cristina, Deputy CEO, presented to the Board highlighting the following:

- Timeline (November 2020 November 2021)
- ILA Phases and Milestones (Phases 1-3)
- Appraisal Methodology and Value (land, facility, railroad & support systems, facility valuation, railway support systems valuation and appraised value)
- Lease Rate and Operating Expense Calculation and DART Counterproposal

Motion by Vice-Chair Gilmore with a second by Secretary Costa to approve Option 1 of the agenda item memo as provided with the understanding that DART will provide an operations flow that can be included in the agreement and authorize the CEO to execute any necessary documents after review by Legal Counsel. Motion passes 5-0.

11. Discuss and Consider Approval of Receipt of DART design funds and execution of Task Orders with Jacobs Engineering for design of the Joint Rail Operations Facility (JROF) expansion at the Denton County Transportation Authority (DCTA) Rail Operations and Maintenance Facility (ROMF)

(packet pages 223-259)

Action Item

Presenter: Paul Cristina, Deputy CEO

Backup Information: Memo

Exhibit 1: Accounts Receivable Letter

Exhibit 2: Jacobs Engineering Scope of Work Exhibit 3: DCTA – DART Interlocal Agreement

Paul Cristina, Deputy CEO, presented the report to the Board. Board discussion regarding whether staff would manage the design and construction and possible concerns with utilizing Jacobs Engineering. Paul Cristina indicated that he will be the lead on the project; however, staff will be discussing either to utilize a consultant or employ an already budgeted project management staff member.

Motion by Secretary Costa with a second by Vice Chair Gilmore to approve as presented. Motion passes 5-0.

12. Discuss FY21 TRIP Annual Report and FY22 TRIP Annual Call for Projects

(packet pages 260-314)

Discussion Item

Presenter: Tim Palermo, Planning & Data Analytics Manager

Backup Information: Memo

Exhibit 1: TRiP Annual Report for FY21

Exhibit 2: Proposed FY22 Member City Funding Allocations Including FY21

Rollover Amounts

Exhibit 3: TRiP Annual Call for Projects for FY22

Time Palermo, Planning & Data Analytics Manager, provided the Board with the report highlighting the following:

• Definition of TRiP: Transportation Reinvestment Program



- FY21 Program Highlights: 10 grants awarded totaling over \$5.3 million. Over \$2.2 million rolled over to FY22.
 - o 6 in Denton
 - o 3 in Lewisville
 - 1 in Highland Village
- FY22 TRiP Program Funding Levels
- FY22 Call for Projects
- TRiP Project Selection Key Dates
 - May 2 Applications Due
 - June 16 Project Eligibility Reviews Completed
 - June 23 DCTA Board Consideration
 - July Prepare and Execute Member City TRiP Reimbursement Agreements

Board discussion regarding sales tax collection by member cities, accessibility of pedestrian sidewalks. The Board thanked former Board Chair Chris Watts for his leadership in reinstating this program.

13. Discuss Local and Regional Transportation Updates and Legislative Issues

(packet pages N/A)

Discussion Item

Presenters: Cesar Molina, Chair

Dianne Costa, Board Member

Raymond Suarez, CEO

Secretary Costa provided the following updates:

- o Dallas Regional Mobility Coalition: Ridership, Service modifications and the Castle Hills expansion
- o RTC: Discussed the Colin County Transportation Study

INFORMATIONAL REPORTS

1. Monthly Financial Reports

(packet pages 315-321)

Backup Information: Memo 1: Monthly Sales Tax Receipts

Exhibit 1: FY22 Monthly Sales Tax Report

Memo 2: Monthly Mobility-as-a-Service Update

Memo 3: Budget Information

2. Ridership Trends and Rail Trail Utilization Report

(packet pages 322-338)

Backup Information: Memo

Exhibit 1: FY19-FY22 Total Monthly Ridership Trend – Rail Exhibit 2: FY19-FY22 Total Monthly Ridership Trend – Bus Exhibit 3: FY19-FY22 Total Monthly Ridership Trend – Access Exhibit 4: FY19-FY22 Total Monthly Ridership Trend – On-Demand Exhibit 5: Total Rail Boardings as a Percentage of February 2020 Exhibit 6: November/December 2021 Rail Trail Utilization Report



3. Capital Edge Federal Legislative Briefing

(packet pages 339-340)

Backup Information: Memo

4. Request for Proposals (RFP) 22-01 Commuter Vanpool Program

(packet pages 341-423)

Backup Information: Memo

Exhibit 1: Request for Proposal 22-01

The Board did not have any questions or comments as it relates to the Informational Reports.

FUTURE AGENDA ITEMS AND BOARD MEMBER REQUESTS

Staff will discuss proposed future agenda items. Board members may request an informational item or action item to be added to the next Board meeting agenda.

The following are topics and/or board requests.

- o March 24, 2022 Agenda item: Set new date for Board Workshop/Retreat
- o March 24, 2022 Agenda item: DCTA property
- o A-train Optimization
- Extending A-train to the Silver Line
- o Update on bus operation with Trinity Metro
- o Board Request: A list of all contracts with expiring terms to be sent to the entire Board

REPORT ON ITEMS OF COMMUNITY INTEREST

Pursuant to Texas Government Section 551.0415 the Board of Directors may report on following items: (1) expression of thanks, congratulations, or condolences; (2) information about holiday schedules; (3) recognition of individuals; (4) reminders about upcoming DCTA and Member City events; (5) information about community events; and (6) announcements involving imminent threat to public health and safety.

 NTMC General Manager RJ Garza has accepted a new position. Maurice Pearl will be the new General Manager for NTMC.

CONVENE EXECUTIVE SESSION

The Board may convene the Regular Board Meeting into Closed Executive Session for the following:

The Board of Directors will convene into Closed Executive Session pursuant to Section 551.074 of the Texas Government Code, Personnel Matters, to deliberate the evaluation and duties of General Counsel.

The Board of Directors will convene into Closed Executive Session pursuant to Section 551.074 of the Texas Government Code, Personnel Matters, to deliberate the evaluation and duties of the Chief Executive Officer.

The Board of Directors convened into Executive Session at 11:03am and concluded Executive Session at 1:50pm with no action taken on both items.



RECONVENE OPEN SESSION

Reconvene and Take Necessary Action on Items Discussed during Executive Session.

ADJOURN

Board Members:

Cesar Molina, Denton County Seat 1, Chair
TJ Gilmore, Vice-Chair
Dianne Costa, Highland Village
Alison Maguire, Denton
Andy Eads, Denton County Seat 2

Alternates

Jody Gonzalez, Denton County Seat 1
Kristin Green, Lewisville
Pat Smith, Denton
Paul Stevens, Highland Village
Vacant, Denton County Seat 2

Non-Voting Board Members:

Dennie Franklin, Frisco Mark Miller, Flower Mound Joe Perez, The Colony Connie White, Small Cities Tom Winterburn, Corinth

Staff Liaison:

Raymond Suarez, CEO

| This notice was posted on January 21, 2022, by 5pm. | |
|---|--|
| | |
| Kisha Morris-Perkins | |
| Executive Assistant Board Process Manager | |



Board of Directors Memo

February 24, 2022

SUBJECT: Consider Approval of Monthly Financial Statements for January 2022

Recommendation

Staff recommends approval.

Background

The financial statements are presented monthly to the Board of Directors for acceptance. The reports for the period ending January 31, 2022 include the Statement of Change in Net Position, Statement of Net Position, and Capital Projects Budget Report. These reports provide a comparison of year-to-date budget vs. actual as of the current month.

Previous Board Activity & Action

There has been no previous Board-level activity on this item.

Identified Need

Provides the Board a review of the agency's financial position and performance to budget.

Financial Impact

The following are major variances between year-to-date budget and year-to-date actuals, which are annotated on the Statement of Change in Net Position.

• Note A: Passenger Revenues – YTD favorable by \$58k due primarily to A-train and GoZone ridership of 213k which was 53% higher than budgeted ridership of 139k (\$44k increased revenue).

| Total Rail Ridership | | YTD FY22 Actual Ridership 58,164 | YTD FY22 Budgeted Ridership 45,104 | % Variance, Actual to Budget 29% | YTD FY21 Actual Ridership 32,680 | % Variance, Actual to Prior Yr 78% |
|-----------------------------|-----|---|---|---|---|---|
| Connect | | 58,276 | 69,337 | -16% | 69,625 | -16% |
| Access & Zone Service | (A) | 6,705 | 6,633 | 1% | 6,091 | 10% |
| GoZone | | 155,106 | 94,262 | 65% | - | N/A |
| Frisco | (B) | 1,963 | 1,331 | 47% | 721 | 172% |
| Collin County Transit (CCT) | (B) | 3,371 | 5,387 | -37% | 3,345 | 1% |
| North Texas Xpress | (C) | 602 | 157 | 283% | 1,563 | -61% |
| University of North Texas | (D) | 365,726 | 572,504 | -36% | 88,800 | 312% |
| Special Movements | (D) | 329 | - | N/A | - | N/A |
| Total Bus Ridership | - | 592,078 | 749,611 | -21% | 170,145 | 248% |
| Vanpool | (D) | 68,879 | | N/A | 66,561 | 3% |
| Total System Ridership | _ | 719,121 | 794,715 | -10% | 269,386 | 167% |

⁽A) FY21 ridership includes Lewisville Lakeway On-Demand and Downtown Denton Transit Center (DDTC) Evening On-Demand which ended September 6, 2021.

⁽B) Includes Demand Response service and Taxi service.

⁽C) FY21 ridership includes North Texas Xpress operated jointly with Trinity Metro through September 6, 2021. Beginning September 7, 2021, DCTA operates an abbreviated portion of the route with two trips each weekday.

⁽D) These ridership numbers are not linked to passenger revenues and are shown for information purposes only to present system-wide ridership.



- Note B: Contract Service Revenue YTD unfavorable by \$134k primarily due to lower than budgeted revenue hours (\$66k decreased revenue) and billable fuel costs (\$31k decreased revenue). Average pass-through fuel cost was \$2.67/gallon compared to budgeted \$3.00/gallon and usage of 31k gallons was 18% lower than budgeted usage of 38k gallons. Additionally, Lyft and Taxi services were under budget (\$36k decreased revenue).
- Note C: Sales Tax Revenue January sales tax revenue was not yet received as of month-end close and is accrued for the month based on budget. Sales tax generated in January will be received in March.
- Note D: Federal/State Grants Capital YTD favorable by \$56k due to reimbursements for the Positive Train Control (PTC) project being received earlier than anticipated in the budget.

| | YTD FY22 | | YTD FY22 | | Variance, | | |
|-----------------------------------|----------|------------|----------|-----------|------------------|--------|--|
| | Actua | al Revenue | Budgetec | l Revenue | Actual to Budget | | |
| PTC Implementation & Enhancements | \$ | 56,293 | \$ | - | \$ | 56,293 | |
| · | \$ | 56,293 | \$ | - | \$ | 56,293 | |

• Note E: Federal/State Grants - Operating - YTD unfavorable by \$1.4 million mainly due to timing differences of drawdowns for operating assistance, as well as bus and rail preventive maintenance reimbursements. Reimbursement requests will be made in the next few weeks once drawdown calculations are finalized.

| | Υ | TD FY22 |) | /TD FY22 | | Variance, |
|-----------------------------|------|-------------|-------|--------------|------|---------------|
| | Actu | ıal Revenue | Budge | eted Revenue | Acti | ual to Budget |
| Bus Preventive Maintenance | \$ | 176,182 | \$ | 620,000 | \$ | (443,818) |
| Rail Preventive Maintenance | | 1,139,805 | | 1,541,404 | | (401,599) |
| Operating Assistance | | 3,311,691 | | 3,963,231 | | (651,540) |
| ADA Assistance | | 165,968 | | 100,000 | | 65,968 |
| Vanpool | | 61,275 | | 63,165 | | (1,890) |
| · | \$ | 4,854,921 | \$ | 6,287,800 | \$ | (1,432,879) |

- Note F: Purchased Transportation Services Expense YTD unfavorable by \$442k mainly due to higher than anticipated GoZone service costs. The FY22 YTD budget anticipated 44k GoZone service hours; actual YTD GoZone billed hours were 51k (\$283k increased expense). Additionally, \$60k for after-hours customer service support charges was not anticipated in the budget and \$15k was billed for bike rack installations that were planned in the FY21 budget. Purchased transportation for rail services is \$39k over budget due to projects that were budgeted in FY21 but not completed until FY22 due to supply chain delays related to COVID-19. Costs for the Trinity Metro Alliance Lyft contract are also higher than budgeted (\$34k) due to higher than anticipated usage; a budget amendment will be brought to the Board in the coming months, along with an adjustment to increase budgeted revenue associated with this contract.
- Note G: Depreciation Expense YTD unfavorable by \$446k due to capitalization of the Positive Train Control (PTC) project in FY21 ahead of the budgeted completion date of 12/31/21, as the project was deemed materially complete for recognition. A budget amendment for this adjustment will be brought to the Board in March.



Exhibits

Exhibit 1.1: Monthly Financial Statements – January 2022 Exhibit 1.2: Capital Projects Budget Report – January 2022

Submitted By:

Khoa Nguyen, Accounting Manager

Reviewed By:

Amber Karkauskas, Controller/AVP of Finance

Final Review:

Marisa Perry, CPA, Chief Financial Officer/VP of Finance



DENTON COUNTY TRANSPORTATION AUTHORITY

CHANGE IN NET POSITION

MONTH AND YEAR TO DATE AS OF JANUARY 31, 2022

(UNAUDITED)

| | Month | Ended January | 31, 2022 | Yea | ar to Date January 3 | 1, 2022 | | |
|--|--------------|---------------|------------|-------------|----------------------|--------------|------------------|--------|
| Description | Actual | Budget | Variance | Actual | Budget | Variance | Annual Budget | |
| Revenue and Other Income | | | | | | | | |
| Passenger Revenues | \$ 63,321 | \$ 54,008 | \$ 9,313 | \$ 273,63 | 6 \$ 216,128 | \$ 57,508 | \$ 642,579 | Note A |
| Contract Service Revenues | 226,778 | 279,206 | (52,428) | 1,152,08 | 6 1,285,841 | (133,755) | 3,915,759 | Note B |
| Sales Tax Revenues | 2,738,060 | 2,429,458 | 308,602 | 12,218,57 | 7 11,616,433 | 602,144 | 32,663,897 | Note C |
| Federal/State Grants - Capital | - | - | - | 56,29 | - 3 | 56,293 | 4,609,056 | Note D |
| Federal/State Grants - Operating | 3,965,195 | 4,546,614 | (581,419) | 4,854,92 | 21 6,287,800 | (1,432,879) | 21,781,841 | Note E |
| Total Revenues and Other Income | 6,993,354 | 7,309,286 | (315,932) | 18,555,51 | 4 19,406,202 | (850,688) | 63,613,132 | |
| Operating Expenses | | | | | | | | |
| Salary, Wages and Benefits | 314,717 | 415,596 | 100,880 | 1,285,90 | 0 1,691,245 | 405,345 | 5,103,643 | |
| Outsourced Services and Charges | 328,117 | 509,988 | 181,871 | 1,018,90 | | 947,626 | 5,083,312 | |
| Materials and Supplies | 205,006 | 272,707 | 67,701 | 641,31 | 8 1,054,388 | 413,070 | 2,855,594 | |
| Utilities | 39,428 | 43,853 | 4,425 | 115,07 | 71 175,423 | 60,352 | 526,281 | |
| Insurance | 79,261 | 141,412 | 62,151 | 353,63 | 4 574,757 | 221,123 | 1,706,052 | |
| Purchased Transportation Services | 1,580,127 | 1,401,124 | (179,003) | 6,039,13 | , | (442,038) | 16,830,256 | Note F |
| Employee Development | 6,993 | 32,618 | 25,625 | 19,56 | | 86,195 | 235,385 | |
| Leases and Rentals | 24,001 | 11,546 | (12,455) | 47,31 | | (1,005) | 139,772 | |
| Depreciation | 946,716 | 948,025 | 1,309 | 3,786,86 | , | (446,396) | 10,899,464 | Note G |
| Total Operating Expenses | 3,524,365 | 3,776,869 | 252,504 | 13,307,71 | | 1,244,270 | 43,379,759 | • |
| Income Before Non-Operating Revenues and Expenses | 3,468,988 | 3,532,417 | (63,429) | 5,247,79 | 8 4,854,216 | 393,582 | 20,233,373 | |
| Non-Operating Revenues/(Expense) | | | | | | | | |
| Investment Income | (8,530) | 1,000 | (9,530) | (10,58 | 4,000 | (14,582) | 12,000 | |
| Gain (Loss) on Disposal of Assets | - | - | - | (5,24 | -5) | (5,245) | - | |
| Other Income/(Expense) - Miscellaneous | 188,182 | - | 188,182 | 210,97 | 9 - | 210,979 | - | |
| Long Term Debt Interest/Expense | (19,946) | (19,817) | (129) | (74,48 | 2) (79,268) | 4,786 | (237,800) | _ |
| Total Non-Operating Revenues/(Expenses) | 159,706 | (18,817) | 178,523 | 120,67 | 71 (75,268) | 195,939 | (225,800) | _ |
| Income (Loss) before Transfers | 3,628,694 | 3,513,600 | 115,094 | 5,368,46 | 9 4,778,948 | 589,521 | 20,007,573 | |
| Transfers Out | (456,432) | (544,315) | 87,883 | (2,128,31 | 5) (2,730,610) | 602,295 | (7,193,067) | |
| Total Transfers | (456,432) | (544,315) | 87,883 | (2,128,31 | 5) (2,730,610) | 602,295 | (7,193,067) | • |
| Change in Net Position | \$ 3,172,263 | \$ 2,969,285 | \$ 202,978 | \$ 3,240,15 | 4 \$ 2,048,338 | \$ 1,191,816 | \$ 12,814,506 | |



DENTON COUNTY TRANSPORTATION AUTHORITY

STATEMENT OF NET POSITION AS OF JANUARY 31, 2022 (UNAUDITED)

| | January 31, 2022 | December 31, 2021 | Change |
|---|-------------------------|-------------------------|-----------------------|
| Assets | | | |
| Current Assets | | | |
| Operating Cash & Cash Equivalents | \$ 58,500,631 | \$ 59,530,779 | \$ (1,030,148) |
| Reserves: Cash & Cash Equivalents | 4,111,428 | 4,111,393 | 35 |
| Reserves: Investments | 8,094,382 | 9,614,889 | (1,520,508) |
| Accounts & Notes Receivable | 12,975,889 | 8,736,698 | 4,239,191 |
| Prepaid Expenses | 662,581 | 733,244 | (70,663) |
| | 717,705 | 735,244 | (7,500) |
| Inventory | | | , , |
| Restricted Asset-Cash and Equivalents Total Current Assets | 1,362,086 86,424,701 | 1,376,059 84,828,267 | (13,973) 1,596,434 |
| Non-Current Assets | | | |
| Land | 17,394,147 | 17,394,147 | _ |
| | | | - |
| Land Improvements | 12,158,726 | 12,158,726 | _ |
| Machinery & Equipment | 5,243,986 | 5,243,986 | - |
| Vehicles | 93,183,134 | 93,183,134 | - |
| Computers & Software | 1,791,431 | 1,791,431 | - |
| Intangible Assets | 16,997,155 | 16,997,155 | - |
| Construction in Progress | 3,539,507 | 3,539,230 | 278 |
| Other Capital Assets, Net | 251,986,070 | 251,986,070 | - |
| Accumulated Depreciation | (100,087,099) | (99,140,383) | (946,716) |
| Net Pension Asset | 65,492_ | 65,492 | |
| Total Non-Current Assets | 302,272,549 | 303,218,988 | (946,439) |
| Total Assets | 388,697,251 | 388,047,256 | 649,995 |
| Deferred Outflow of Resources | | | |
| Deferred Outflows Related to Pensions | 421,130 | 421,130 | |
| Total Deferred Outflow of Resources | 421,130 | 421,130 | <u> </u> |
| Liabilities | | | |
| | | | |
| Current Liabilities | 1750100 | 4 202 027 | (2.5.42.027) |
| Accounts Payable and Accrued Expenses | 1,759,100 | 4,303,037 | (2,543,937) |
| Deferred Revenues | 52,630 | 50,906 | 1,724 |
| Interest Payable | 74,482 | 54,536 | 19,946 |
| Total Current Liabilities | 1,886,211 | 4,408,479 | (2,522,267) |
| Non-Current Liabilities | | | |
| Rail Easement Payable | 800,000 | 800,000 | - |
| Bonds Payable | 21,265,000 | 21,265,000 | |
| Total Non-Current Liabilities | 22,065,000 | 22,065,000 | |
| Total Liabilities | 23,951,211 | 26,473,479 | (2,522,267) |
| Deferred Inflow of Resources | | | |
| Deferred Inflows Related to Pensions | 152,490 | 152,490 | |
| Total Deferred Inflow of Resources | 152,490 | 152,490 | |
| Net Position | | | |
| Net Investment in Capital Assets | 283,862,326 | 283,862,326 | - |
| Unrestricted | 77,781,216 | 77,781,216 | - |
| Change in Net Position | 3,240,154 | 67,891 | 3,172,263 |
| Total Net Position | \$ 364,883,696 | \$ 361,711,433 | \$ 3,172,263 |
| . Otal 1100 1 Outlott | 501,005,070 | ÷ 501,711,155 | 7 3,172,203 |



NORTH TEXAS MOBILITY CORPORATION

CHANGE IN NET POSITION

MONTH AND YEAR TO DATE AS OF JANUARY 31, 2022

(UNAUDITED)

| | Month | End | ed January 3 | 31, 202 | 22 | Year to | ar to Date January 31, 202 | | | 22 | | |
|---------------------------------|---------------|-----|--------------|---------|----------|-----------------|----------------------------|-------------|----|-----------|----|-------------|
| Description | Actual | | Budget | ٧ | ariance | Actual | | Budget | ٧ | ariance | An | nual Budget |
| Operating Expenses | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Salary, Wages and Benefits | \$ 398,946 | \$ | 493,745 | \$ | 94,799 | \$ 1,955,765 | \$ | 2,527,112 | \$ | 571,347 | \$ | 6,590,242 |
| Outsourced Services and Charges | 48,812 | | 38,626 | | (10,186) | 142,333 | | 153,514 | | 11,181 | | 452,892 |
| Materials and Supplies | - | | 184 | | 184 | 40 | | 668 | | 628 | | 1,936 |
| Insurance | 6,982 | | 7,635 | | 653 | 27,927 | | 28,276 | | 349 | | 89,337 |
| Employee Development | 1,692 | | 4,125 | | 2,433 | 2,251 | | 21,040 | | 18,789 | | 58,660 |
| Total Operating Expenses | 456,432 | | 544,315 | | 87,883 | 2,128,315 | | 2,730,610 | | 602,295 | | 7,193,067 |
| Income (Loss) before Transfers | (456,432) | | (544,315) | | 87,883 | (2,128,315) | | (2,730,610) | | 602,295 | | (7,193,067) |
| Transfers In | 456,432 | | 544,315 | | (87,883) | 2,128,315 | | 2,730,610 | | (602,295) | | 7,193,067 |
| Total Transfers | 456,432 | | 544,315 | | (87,883) | 2,128,315 | | 2,730,610 | | (602,295) | | 7,193,067 |
| Change in Net Position | \$ - | \$ | - | \$ | | \$ - | \$ | - | \$ | - | \$ | _ |



NORTH TEXAS MOBILITY CORPORATION

STATEMENT OF NET POSITION AS OF JANUARY 31, 2022 (UNAUDITED)

| | Janua | ary 31, 2022 | Decen | nber 31, 2021 | Change |
|---------------------------------------|-------|--------------|-------|---------------|----------------|
| Assets | | | | | |
| Operating Cash & Cash Equivalents | \$ | 147,606 | \$ | 241,462 | \$ (93,857) |
| Accounts & Notes Receivable | | - | | - | - |
| Prepaid Expenses | | 55,853 | | 62,835 | (6,982) |
| Total Assets | | 203,459 | | 304,297 | (100,838) |
| Liabilities | | | | | |
| Accounts Payable and Accrued Expenses | | 203,459 | | 304,297 | (100,838) |
| Total Liabilities | | 203,459 | | 304,297 | (100,838) |
| Net Position | | | | | |
| Change in Net Position | | - | | _ | - |
| Total Net Position | \$ | - | \$ | - | \$ - |

DENTON COUNTY TRANSPORTATION AUTHORITY CAPITAL PROJECTS BUDGET REPORT

AS OF JANUARY 31, 2022

| Capital Project Number/Name | Project Budget | January 2022 Actuals Booked | Actuals Life To Date | \$ Under/ (Over) Budget | % of Budget (As of January 2022 Close) |
|--|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|----------------------------|--|
| Construction Work in Progress | | | | | |
| G&A Capital Projects | | | | | |
| Total 10302 · Infrastructure Acquisition | \$ 3,251,990 | \$ - | \$ 2,617,009 | \$ 634,981 | 80% |
| Total 10404 · Backup Infrastructure Upgrade | 45,000 | - | - | 45,000 | 0% |
| Total 10702 · Transportation Reinvestment Program - FY21 Close-Out to Operating Expense Net Remaining · Transportation Reinvestment Program - FY21 | 100,000 <i>(18,557)</i> 81,444 | - | 35,773 <i>(18,557)</i> 17,216 | 64,228 | 36% |
| Total 10702.1 · Transportation Reinvestment Program FY21 - Denton Close-Out to Operating Expense | 3,424,946 | 416 | 5,590 (<i>5,173</i>) | 3,419,356 | 0% |
| Net Remaining · Transportation Reinvestment Program FY21 - Denton | 3,419,773 | 416 | 416 | 3,419,356 | |
| Total 10702.2 · Transportation Reinvestment Program FY21 - Highland Village Close-Out to Operating Expense Net Remaining · Transportation Reinvestment Program FY21 - Highland Village | 379,591 <i>(2,358)</i> 377,233 | - | 2,358 <i>(2,358)</i> | 377,233 377,233 | 1% |
| Total 10702.3 · Transportation Reinvestment Program FY21 - Lewisville Close-Out to Operating Expense | 3,837,597 (3,770) | 278 278 | 3,987 <i>(3,710)</i> | 3,833,610 | 0% |
| Net Remaining · Transportation Reinvestment Program FY21 - Lewisville | 3,833,887 | 2/8 | 278 | 3,833,610 100.000 | 09/ |
| Total 10703 · Transportation Reinvestment Program - FY22 | 100,000 | (416) | - | , | 0% 0% |
| Total 10703.1 · Transportation Reinvestment Program FY22 - Denton | 3,074,578 | (416) | - | 3,074,578 | 0% |
| Total 10703.2 · Transportation Reinvestment Program FY22 - Highland Village | 324,900 3,619,951 | - | - | 324,900 3,619,951 | 0% |
| Total 10703.3 · Transportation Reinvestment Program FY22 - Lewisville | | | | | |
| Total G&A Capital Projects | 18,128,756 | 278 | 2,634,919 | 15,493,837 | 15% |
| Bus Capital Projects | | | | | |
| Total 50307 · Major Maintenance - Bus 2022 | 179,530 | - | - | 179,530 | 0% |
| Total 50411 · Integrated Fare Payment | 600,000 | - | - | 600,000 | 0% |
| Total 50412 · Bus OMF Network Video Recorder | 26,000 | - | - | 26,000 | 0% |
| Total 50413 · DDTC Rail Fiber Extension | 125,000 | - | - | 125,000 | 0% |
| Total Bus Capital Projects | 930,530 | - | - | 930,530 | 0% |
| Rail Capital Projects | | | | | |
| Total 61406.1 · Positive Train Control Implementation Close-Out to Capitalized Assets | 16,720,141 <i>(16,022,566)</i> | - - | 16,110,392 <i>(16,022,566)</i> | 609,749 | 96% |
| Net Remaining · Positive Train Control Implementation | 697,575 | - | 87,826 | 609,749 | |
| Total 61406.2 · Positive Train Control Enhancements | 5,000,000 | - | 148,180 | 4,851,820 | 3% |
| Total 61605 · Brownfield Remediation Close-Out to Operating Expenses Net Remaining · Brownfield Remediation | 420,000 (366,448) 53,552 | - - | 366,448 <i>(366,448)</i> - | 53,552 53,552 | 87% |
| Total 61723.1 · Canopy Repairs 2021 Close-Out to Operating Expenses Not Remaining - Canopy Repairs 2021 | 486,127 (65,055) | - - | 175,476 (65,055) | 310,651 | 36% |
| Net Remaining · Canopy Repairs 2021 | 421,072 | - | 110,421 | 310,651 | 200/ |
| Total 61724 · Major Maintenance-Rail 2022 | 1,836,442 | <u>-</u> | 558,162 | 1,278,280 | 30% |
| Total Rail Capital Projects | 8,008,641 | - | 904,588 | 7,104,052 | 11% |
| Total Construction Work in Progress | \$ 27,067,926 | \$ 278 | \$ 3,539,507 | \$ 23,528,419 | 13% |



Board of Directors Memo

February 24, 2022

SUBJECT: Presentation of Audit Report for Fiscal Year End 09/30/2021 by Plante & Moran, PLLC and Consider Approval of the FY2021 Financial Statements and Supplemental Information

Recommendation

Staff recommends the Board of Directors approve the FY2021 financial statements and supplemental information.

Background

Chapter 460 and DCTA bylaws require an annual audit of the affairs of the Authority prepared by an independent certified public accountant. Any deficiencies noted in the audit report shall be addressed at a regular meeting of the Authority and addressed on the record.

Previous Board Activity & Action

• January 27, 2022 – The preliminary FY2021 audit report and draft basic financial statements were presented to the Board at the DCTA Board meeting.

Identified Need

As part of the audit engagement, DCTA's independent auditor, Plante & Moran, PLLC (Plante Moran), has a responsibility to communicate with those charged with governance in the audit of financial statements. Those required communications were included in Plante Moran's presentation on January 27, 2022. The FY2021 Annual Comprehensive Financial Report (ACFR) is included as Exhibit 1 to this item.

Title 2 U.S. Code of Federal Regulations (CFR) Part 200, *Uniform Administrative Requirements, Cost Principles, and Audit Requirements for Federal Awards* (Uniform Guidance) requires a governmental organization with federal expenditures in excess of \$750,000 to have a single audit performed, which includes an audit of both the financial statements and the federal awards. The FY2021 Single Audit Report is included as Exhibit 2 to this item.

Financial Impact

There is no financial impact associated with the approval of the FY2021 financial statements and supplemental information.

Exhibits

Exhibit 1: FY2021 Annual Comprehensive Financial Report (ACFR)

Exhibit 2: FY2021 Single Audit Report

Exhibit 3: Plante Moran's Report to the Board of Directors

Submitted By:

Amber Karkauskas, Controller/AVP of Finance

Final Review:

Marisa Perry, CPA, CFO/VP of Finance

Annual Comprehensive Annual Report Financial Report

DENTON COUNTY TRANSPORTATION AUTHORITY



FISCAL YEAR ENDED SEPTEMBER 30, 2021 & 2020

LEWISVILLE, TEXAS

Annual Comprehensive Financial Report with Supplemental Information September 30, 2021 and 2020

Prepared by:
DCTA Finance Department
Lewisville, Texas

47

48

49

Denton County Transportation Authority

Total Employees and Contract Operations

Operating Statistics

Farebox Recovery Percentage

Contents **Introductory Section Letter of Transmittal** i-vii **GFOA Certificate of Achievement** viii **Organizational Chart** İΧ **List of Principal Officials** Х **Financial Section** 1-2 **Independent Auditor's Report Management's Discussion and Analysis** 3-7 **Basic Financial Statements** Statement of Net Position 8 Statement of Revenues, Expenses, and Changes in Net Position 9 Statement of Cash Flows 10-11 Notes to Financial Statements 12-31 **Required Supplemental Information** Schedule of Changes in the Net Pension Liability and Related Ratios 32 Schedule of Pension Contributions 33 Note to Required Supplemental Information 34 **Other Supplemental Information** Schedule of Revenue and Expenses - DCTA - Budget to Actual 35 Schedule of Revenue and Expenses - NTMC - Budget to Actual 36 **Statistical Section Description of the Statistical Section** 37 Net Position by Component 38 Changes in Net Position 39 Capital Assets 40 Revenue by Source 41 Sales Tax Revenue 42 Sales Tax Allocation Received by Member Cities 43 Long-term Debt 44 Demographic and Economic Statistics for Denton County 45 Principal Employers in Denton County 46

INTRODUCTORY SECTION



Letter of Transmittal

February 9, 2022

The Honorable Chair and Members of the Board **Denton County Transportation Authority** Lewisville, Texas

We are pleased to submit the Annual Comprehensive Financial Report (ACFR) of Denton County Transportation Authority (DCTA) for the fiscal year ended September 30, 2021.

This report provides the DCTA Board of Directors, stakeholders, citizens of DCTA's service area, our bondholders and other interested parties with detailed information concerning the financial condition and activities of DCTA. Responsibility for both the accuracy of the presented data and the completeness and fairness of the presentation, including all disclosures, rests with the DCTA. Management is responsible for establishing and maintaining effective internal control over financial reporting. Because the cost of internal controls should not outweigh anticipated benefits, DCTA's framework of internal controls has been designed to provide reasonable, rather than absolute, assurance that the financial statements are free of any material misstatements.

To the best of our knowledge and belief, the enclosed data is accurate in all material respects, and is organized in a manner designed to fairly present the financial position and results of operations of the DCTA as measured by the financial activity of the fund. We also believe that all disclosures necessary to enable the reader to gain the maximum understanding of the DCTA's financial affairs have been included.

Plante & Moran, PLLC, Certified Public Accountants, have issued an unmodified ("clean") opinion on the DCTA's financial statements for the year ended September 30, 2021. The independent auditor's report is located at the front of the financial section of this report.

Management's discussion and analysis (MD&A) immediately follows the independent auditor's report and provides a narrative introduction, overview, and analysis of the basic financial statements. MD&A complements this letter of transmittal and the two should be read in conjunction with each other.

DCTA PROFILE

DCTA is the Coordinated County Transportation Authority for Denton County, created by House Bill 3323, under Chapter 460 of the Texas Transportation Code, approved by the 77th Texas Legislature and signed into law by the Governor in 2001. Voters in Denton County approved the confirmation of DCTA on November 5, 2002 to advance public transportation and transportation-related services. Collection of the sales and use tax dedicated to DCTA from its three member cities (Denton, Highland Village, and Lewisville) began January 1, 2004. DCTA is granted power under Texas law to plan, develop, acquire, construct, own, operate, and maintain a public transportation system.







Location

Denton County encompasses roughly 953 square miles and is located in the northern part of the Dallas-Fort Worth Metroplex adjacent to Collin, Dallas, and Tarrant counties. The county, founded in 1846, is one of the fastest growing counties in the U.S. with an estimated population of 933,220 in 2021 according to North Central Texas Council of Governments (NCTCOG) population estimates, an increase of 41% since 2010.

Governance

DCTA is governed by a five voting-member Board of Directors appointed by respective entities from Denton County and the cities of Denton, Highland Village, and Lewisville serving two-year terms. Large cities, small cities and other Denton County cities make up the remaining six non-voting members. Board officers are elected from the Board membership and serve a one-year term.

<u>Agency Background</u>

The single largest revenue source for DCTA is a dedicated ½ cent local sales tax from its three member cities - Denton, Highland Village, and Lewisville. These revenues, along with federal and state grants, service contracts, passenger fares, and investment income, fund the operations and implementation of DCTA's Long Range Service Plan, which includes a commuter rail component, a bus service component with local fixed route bus service, paratransit demand response, general demand response, commuter vanpools, and university shuttle services as well as a network of park and ride locations and rail and bus facilities to serve area residents and visitors. These elements provide services to improve mobility and air quality, spur economic development, and enhance livability in the areas served. DCTA's A-train connects Denton and Dallas counties. At the Trinity Mills station, riders can transfer to Dallas Area Rapid Transit's (DART) Red, Orange, Green and Blue Lines and the Trinity Railway Express (TRE).

Construction of DCTA's A-train rail corridor and purchase of rail vehicles was accomplished with funding from a Regional Toll Road Funding Initiative (RTRFI) grant received in March 2009 which provided roughly \$250 million and required a 20% local match from DCTA. A contract for construction of the 21-mile rail line was awarded in May 2009, and the A-train officially opened for service in June 2011. In addition to the already existing bus service, the central element of DCTA's initial Long Range Service Plan was achieved with the start of A-train commuter rail service in 2011.

In December 2011, the Board of Directors updated DCTA's Long Range Service Plan to include system-wide improvements to the existing system and opportunities for expansion of the existing system to meet the public transit needs. The plan serves as a road map guiding DCTA's service planning, capital improvement program, and financial planning, and provides input for NCTCOG's Mobility 2045 Plan. NCTCOG serves as the Metropolitan Planning Organization (MPO) for the North Texas region and is the organization charged with coordinating regional transportation planning efforts for a 12-county region which includes Denton County. The Mobility 2045 Plan serves as a blueprint for the region's transportation system planning and guides expenditures of state and federal transportation funds over the next 20-plus years. DCTA provided input regarding key service components of its Long Range Service Plan for incorporation into the Mobility 2045 Plan. The goals defined in the Mobility 2045 Plan guide efforts to accommodate the region's multimodal mobility needs and improve air quality. DCTA and other regional transit agencies, as well as local governments, use NCTCOG's Mobility 2045 Plan as a basis for their own planning efforts.

Accounting System and Budgetary Control

DCTA activities are accounted for in a single enterprise fund, and financial results are reported in accordance with Generally Accepted Accounting Principles (GAAP) and Governmental Accounting Standards Board (GASB) guidance. The accrual basis of accounting is used for the audited financial statements, external reporting, and internally for budgeting, with revenues recorded in the period that they are earned, and expenses recorded in the period in which the liability or benefit is expected.

On an annual basis, DCTA develops and presents for the Board's approval an operating and capital budget within the context of a Long Range Financial Plan. The Long Range Financial Plan outlines the operating components, debt service costs, and Capital Improvement Plan requirements over the next fifteen years and serves as the foundation for the development of the annual operating and capital budget. This document helps provide a financially sustainable perspective of the impact of current year decisions on future years. As part of the annual budget process, the Board also adopts a Budget Contingency Plan which positions DCTA to respond quickly to economic or market fluctuations or downturns.

The Board conducts a public hearing in August to receive citizen input and provides final review of the budget with formal adoption in September of each year. The fiscal year for DCTA is October 1 – September 30. The President/CEO is authorized to transfer budgeted amounts between departments, line items, or capital projects; however, any revisions that alter the total adopted fiscal year budgeted expenditures (operating + capital) must be approved by the Board. As a matter of practice, budget transfers are reported to the Board at its regularly scheduled meetings.

Budget control has been established at the department level. Financial reports showing budget to actual expenses by line item are distributed monthly for review by management. Financial reports are presented to the Board monthly for review and acceptance. Quarterly budget reviews of both the operating budgets and capital project budgets are conducted by Finance staff with the DCTA Executive Team and project managers. Individual line items are reviewed and analyzed for budgetary compliance. Revenue budgets are reviewed monthly.

The Board has also adopted a series of financial standards and policies for the operating and debt management of the agency. In addition, operating procedures have been established in accordance with state and federal requirements to ensure that DCTA is a fiscally sound authority operating an efficient and effective transportation system.

North Texas Mobility Corporation (NTMC) was incorporated on April 1, 2019 and is accounted for as a blended component unit included in DCTA's financial statements. NTMC operations began June 2, 2019. As a fully functional Limited Government Corporation (LGC), the NTMC now operates with a Board of Directors, appointed by the DCTA Board of Directors, and Board officers.

SERVICES PROVIDED

DCTA provides service in Denton County including regional commuter rail service (A-train); fixed route bus service; rideshare on-demand service; paratransit and general demand response service; vanpool service; campus shuttles operated under contract with the University of North Texas (UNT); and contract service in Frisco and Coppell. As reported in the National Transit Database, DCTA carried roughly 848,000 bus and rail passengers in FY21, a 46% decrease from roughly 1.6 million passengers in FY20. Ridership decreased drastically in the second half of FY20 and throughout FY21 as public transportation ridership diminished nation-wide due to the COVID-19 pandemic.

Regional Commuter Rail (A-train)

The A-train is a 21-mile regional rail system connecting Denton and Dallas counties. The rail corridor follows the east side of I-35E and connects the cities of Denton and Carrollton. DCTA has five A-train stations: two in Denton and three in the greater Highland Village-Lewisville area, with a transfer station at the Trinity Mills Station in Carrollton. The Trinity Mills transfer station connects riders with DART rail and bus service. The system also includes a 19-mile hike & bike trail that parallels the A-train rail line.

DCTA operates 11 low-floor diesel-electric articulated GTW passenger rail vehicles designed to comfortably accommodate wheelchairs, strollers, and bikes with room for 104 seated and 96 standing passengers per vehicle. In FY21, rail ridership totaled roughly 113,000 passengers, a decrease of 49% from roughly 221,000 in FY20. Rail service changes were implemented in March 2020 to reduce service hours in response to decreased ridership in light of the COVID-19 pandemic. In September 2020, DCTA increased A-train service levels per Board direction to modify peak period service frequency from 60 minutes to 30 minutes. Decreases in ridership as a result of COVID-19 remained throughout FY21.

Connect Fixed-Route

In FY21, Connect offered local fixed-route bus service in the cities of Denton and Lewisville; these routes totaled roughly 220,000 boardings. Lewisville Connect Routes were discontinued in December 2021 after running alongside GoZone on-demand micro-transit service since September 2021. The Highland Village Connect Shuttle was replaced with an enhanced Lyft program in March 2020. The Highland Village Lyft service was discontinued in September 2021 and was replaced by the GoZone service.

University Shuttle Service

The UNT Campus Shuttle consists of twelve routes including weekday, late night, and weekend-only service through a contractual agreement. The UNT Shuttle service provides transportation from off-campus housing to the campus as well as circulation throughout the campus. Total passengers for FY21 totaled roughly 462,000, a 51% decrease from FY20 ridership of roughly 946,000. Service was reduced significantly in the second half of FY20 as the university moved to virtual learning in response to COVID-19 and some students moved away from the campus area. A portion of these service reductions remained in place throughout FY21 as students continued virtual learning.

GoZone On-Demand

During FY21, the Board of Directors evaluated options for replacing a portion of fixed route service with an on-demand micro-transit service. In January 2021, the Board of Directors awarded an on-demand service delivery contract to Via which allowed the agency to work with Via to develop a proposed service plan that was presented to the public for review and input. In July, a service plan with Via was approved by the Board for GoZone on-demand service; this service launched in September 2021. GoZone is a zone-based on-demand rideshare service that riders utilize for trips within, and sometimes between, designated zones in Denton County. The on-demand service uses a mobile app where passengers book their trips in real-time. A fleet of dedicated vans is used to pick up and drop off riders at virtual stops within the zones. GoZone launched in on September 7, 2021 with almost 14,000 passengers in the first month of service, the final month of FY21.

<u>Demand Response Service</u>

Access offers shared ride, origin to destination ADA paratransit service for residents and visitors in Denton, Highland Village, and Lewisville and also provides service for senior and disabled (non-ADA) passengers in these cities. Any person who wishes to use Access must complete an application, and non-seniors or non-Medicare-eligible individuals must submit a physician's affidavit of eligibility. DCTA carried roughly 16,000 Access passengers in its member city service area in FY21.

Since December 2015, the City of Frisco has contracted with DCTA for curb-to-curb demand response transit service to eligible Frisco residents for trips within Frisco and designated portions of Plano. Taxi vehicles are used in this service to supplement demand-response service as capacity dictates. The service carried roughly 3,000 passengers in FY21. In June 2017, DCTA launched a demand response service in coordination with the City of McKinney and the McKinney Urban Transit District (MUTD) which consisted of a subsidized taxi voucher program to provide transit options for participating MUTD cities including Celina, Lowry Crossing, McKinney, Melissa, Princeton and Prosper. In FY21, the service provided transportation to almost 11,000 passengers. This service was discontinued in December 2021 as DART began managing the service.

<u>Vanpools</u>

The Vanpool service provides a low-cost commuting alternative for residents to get to work. Vanpools are ideal for groups of six to fifteen people. Individuals who live or work in Denton County can start a vanpool through their employer or create one with others who have similar commute origins and destinations. During FY21, there were a maximum 67 vanpools in operation.

DCTA PROGRESS

In FY21, DCTA completed the Board-led Transformation Initiative, identifying priority projects on a five-year strategic roadmap. DCTA engaged selected consultant teams with expertise in strategic planning, information technology, process improvement, and organizational management best practices who worked closely with staff to expand the use of non-traditional transit services and products, allowing for a more tailored response to the demands of multiple markets and developing a robust, equitable, consumer-centric transportation system which leverages existing infrastructure. DCTA launched GoZone service in September 2021 across all member cities overlayed on existing fixed route bus service. As a result, bus ridership rebounded from a 70% drop from pre-pandemic levels to exceeding pre-pandemic levels with ridership that is projected to continue growing.

In FY22, DCTA will be working with stakeholder communities to fully integrate mobility services with integrated fare strategies to streamline trip planning and improve accessibility to mobility services for the riding public. Phase Two of the Transformation Initiative will focus on operational and construction planning for DCTA and DART to share access to Downtown Carrollton, implementation of a new enterprise resource planning (ERP) system to automate manual processes, completion of a Comprehensive Operational Analysis to define the optimal service mix for fixed route bus service and ondemand micro-transit, and exploration of a new rail station on the A-train corridor.

DCTA is committed to rail safety, working diligently to implement Positive Train Control (PTC), and DCTA received PTC certification from the Federal Railroad Administration (FRA) ahead of the December 31, 2020 deadline. DCTA staff has been working with DART throughout FY21 and recently completed an Interlocal Agreement to design and construct an expansion to DCTA's existing Rail Operations and Maintenance facility so that both agencies can jointly operate from DCTA's facility to be renamed as the Joint Rail Operations Facility (JROF). DCTA will continue to work the DART on matters including shared railroad liability insurance and exploring joint services, technology and operational efficiencies.

FUTURE OUTLOOK

Total revenues were \$60.4 million in FY21 compared to \$55.1 million in FY20. DCTA's largest revenue source, sales tax, grew from \$29.8 million in FY20 to \$35.3 million in FY21. Despite sales tax growth, DCTA faces challenges with rising healthcare costs, low interest rates impacting investment earnings, and prioritizing funding for service expansion and future construction projects. In addition, the sustainability of the current economic expansion remains notable; its impact on local sales tax will continue to be monitored closely.

Regional Economy

The Dallas–Fort Worth economy strengthened throughout 2021. At the end of the year, payroll employment and consumer spending were strong and business-cycle indexes were expanding. The Federal Reserve Bank of Dallas reported in its December 2021 Economic Indicators Update:

DFW employment rose an annualized 10.8 percent (33,400 jobs) in November, up from an upwardly revised 6.3 percent (19,800 jobs) in October... Growth was broad based across sectors, with leisure and hospitality and professional and business services leading the way. The November gain puts DFW employment at 1.7 percent (63,900 jobs) above its prepandemic level in February 2020. The Dallas and Fort Worth business-cycle indexes continued to expand strongly in November, buoyed by robust job growth and falling unemployment. The Dallas index rose an annualized 13.7 percent, marking the 19th straight month of growth, and was up 5.7 percent from its February 2020 level... The Fort Worth index climbed an annualized 14.2 percent in November, its ninth successive month of expansion, and eclipsed its prepandemic high by 2.4 percent. Since late February 2021, consumer spending in DFW has stayed consistently above prepandemic levels... Rising consumer spending is indicative of rising demand and consumer confidence.

Population Forecast

North Central Texas is a rapidly growing region whose residents and visitors increasingly require a variety of transportation options to serve diverse travel needs. NCTCOG estimates a region population of 7.9 million as of 2021. According to the NCTCOG's Mobility 2045 Plan, population for the Dallas-Fort Worth Metropolitan Area is projected to grow to an estimated 11.2 million by the year 2045. This significant increase in population for North Texas will require a maturing system of roads, public transportation, and bicycle and pedestrian facilities, complemented by local policies and programs to enhance infrastructure investment.

The counties of Collin, Dallas, Denton and Tarrant accounted for 85% of the 16-county population in 2021. The individual population share for Collin and Denton counties within the region has increased since 2010 while the population share for Dallas and Tarrant counties has decreased. Population growth in Denton County is projected to be significant. According to the NCTCOG 2045 Demographic Forecast, the population within Denton County is projected to increase from 933,220 in 2021 to 1,346,314 in 2045, a 44% growth. As Collin and Denton counties continue to grow, DCTA will focus efforts on east/west corridor planning and investments in these areas. The US Census Bureau 2019 American Community Survey estimates that roughly half of individuals who live in Denton County work outside of the county, which highlights the importance of providing transportation links from Denton County to major employment destinations in neighboring counties.

Long Range Service Plan

The Long Range Service Plan provides a roadmap for decision making about transit investments in Denton County over the next 25 years and reaffirms DCTA's goals and performance standards that will be used to help officials make decisions about future investments and the implementation of new services. It will help ensure that transit services mature and develop to better meet the needs of Denton County. In FY22, the Board of Directors will embark on a new strategic visioning session that will inform future priorities. This, along with a comprehensive county-wide transit study that is being conducted by the NCTCOG, will serve as the catalyst for a new Long Range Service Plan for the agency.

Until then, DCTA will be focused on regional rail service through planning and engineering analysis for potential expansion of service south to DART's Downtown Carrollton Station, discussion with a non-member city regarding a potential in-fill station, exploration of adding double tracking to the existing A-train alignment, and conducting a Comprehensive Operational Analysis for DCTA's fixed route bus service and on-demand micro-transit.

OTHER INFORMATION

Independent Audit

Chapter 460, Section 460.402 of the Texas Transportation Code requires an annual audit of the books of account, financial records and transactions of the DCTA by independent certified accountants selected by the Board of Directors. This requirement has been complied with and the independent auditor's report has been included. The Board of Directors reviews recommendations made by the independent auditors and also guides the annual budget process.

DCTA is also required to undergo an audit of federally and state funded programs administered by DCTA. The standards governing the Single Audit engagement require the independent auditor to report on the audited government's internal controls and compliance with laws, regulations, contracts and grants applicable to each major federal and state program. The reports related specifically to the Single Audit are issued under separate cover.

Certificate of Achievement

The Government Finance Officers Association of the United States and Canada (GFOA) awarded a Certificate of Achievement for Excellence in Financial Reporting to the DCTA for its Annual Comprehensive Financial Report (ACFR) for the fiscal year ended September 30, 2020. The Certificate of Achievement is a prestigious national award recognizing conformance with the highest standards for preparation of state and local government financial reports. This was the eleventh consecutive year for the DCTA to receive the Certificate of Achievement.

To be awarded the Certificate of Achievement, a government unit must publish an easily readable and efficiently organized ACFR whose contents conform to program standards. The ACFR must satisfy both generally accepted accounting principles and applicable legal requirements. A Certificate of Achievement is valid for a period of one year only. We believe our current report continues to conform to the Certificate of Achievement program requirements, and we are submitting it to GFOA.

<u>Acknowledgements</u>

The preparation of this report on a timely basis could not have been accomplished without the efficient and dedicated services of the entire DCTA Finance Department staff. We also express our appreciation to all the DCTA staff members who assisted and contributed to the successful completion of this report as well as the guidance provided by our external auditors.

We would like to thank the members of the DCTA Board of Directors for their interest and support in planning and conducting the financial operations of the Denton County Transportation Authority in a responsible and progressive manner.

Sincerely,

Raymond Suarez President/CEO Marisa Perry, CPA
Chief Financial Officer/VP of Finance

Amber Karkauskas, CGFO Controller/AVP of Finance



Government Finance Officers Association

Certificate of Achievement for Excellence in Financial Reporting

Presented to

Denton County Transportation Authority Texas

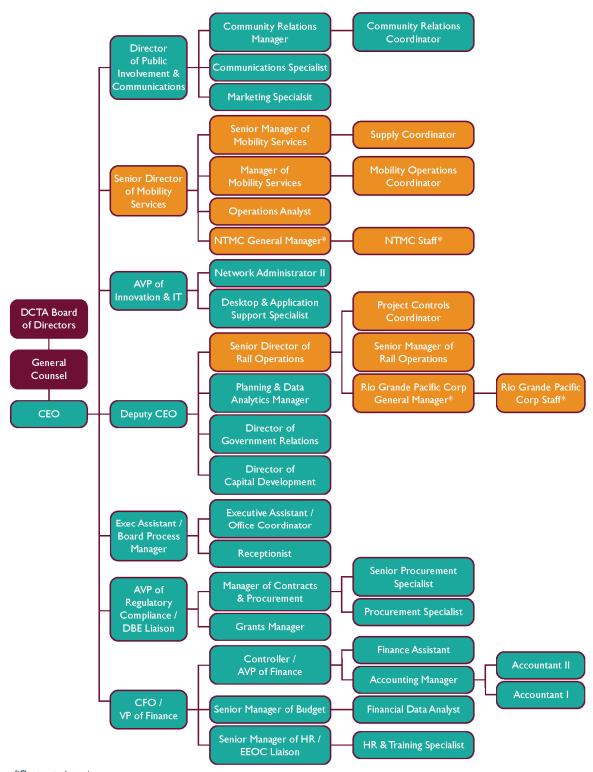
For its Annual Comprehensive Financial Report For the Fiscal Year Ended

September 30, 2020

Christopher P. Morrill

Executive Director/CEO

Organizational Chart As of September 30, 2021



^{*}Contracted services

List of Principal Officials As of September 30, 2021

A Board of Directors composed of 5 voting members representing the county of Denton governs DCTA:

- two members appointed by the Denton County Commissioner's Court;
- three members designated by the municipalities (Cities).

Each Board member serves a term of two years and may be re-appointed. There are no term limits. Large cities, small cities and other Denton County cities make up the remaining six non-voting members. The Board is responsible for the general policy governance of the DCTA with the President/CEO and DCTA staff responsible for day-to-day management, operations, and implementation of the agency's goals and objectives.

| Board Member | Position | Appointed by |
|--------------|------------|--------------------------|
| Chris Watts | Chair | City of Denton |
| Cesar Molina | Vice Chair | Denton County Seat 1 |
| Sam Burke | Secretary | Denton County Seat 2 |
| Dianne Costa | Member | City of Highland Village |
| TJ Gilmore | Member | City of Lewisville |

| Non-Voting Board Members | Position | Appointed by |
|--------------------------|----------|----------------------|
| Dennie Franklin | Member | City of Frisco |
| Mark Miller | Member | Town of Flower Mound |
| Joe Perez | Member | City of The Colony |
| Connie White | Member | Small Cities |
| Tom Winterburn | Member | City of Corinth |
| Vacant | Member | Town of Little Elm |

FINANCIAL SECTION



Plante & Moran, PLLC

Suite 360 4444 W. Bristol Road Flint, MI 48507 Tel: 810.767.5350 Fax: 810.767.8150 plantemoran.com

Independent Auditor's Report

To the Board of Directors
Denton County Transportation Authority

Report on the Financial Statements

We have audited the accompanying basic financial statements of the Denton County Transportation Authority (the "Authority") as of and for the years ended September 30, 2021 and the related notes to the financial statements, which collectively comprise the Authority's basic financial statements, as listed in the table of contents.

Management's Responsibility for the Financial Statements

Management is responsible for the preparation and fair presentation of these financial statements in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America; this includes the design, implementation, and maintenance of internal control relevant to the preparation and fair presentation of financial statements that are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error.

Auditor's Responsibility

Our responsibility is to express an opinion on these financial statements based on our audits. We conducted our audits in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America and the standards applicable to financial audits contained in *Government Auditing Standards*, issued by the Comptroller General of the United States. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audits to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free from material misstatement.

An audit involves performing procedures to obtain audit evidence about the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. The procedures selected depend on the auditor's judgment, including the assessment of the risks of material misstatement of the financial statements, whether due to fraud or error. In making those risk assessments, the auditor considers internal control relevant to the entity's preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the entity's internal control. Accordingly, we express no such opinion. An audit also includes evaluating the appropriateness of accounting policies used and the reasonableness of significant accounting estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the financial statements.

We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our audit opinion.

Opinion

In our opinion, the basic financial statements referred to above present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of the Denton County Transportation Authority as of September 30, 2021 and the changes in its financial position and its cash flows thereof for the years then ended in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

Emphasis of Matter

As described in Note 1 to the financial statements, the Authority made a change to the reporting entity by combining the North Texas Mobility Corporation with the Authority's operations. Our opinion is not modified with respect to this matter. The change described was retrospectively applied to all years presented.

Other Matters

Report on Prior Year Financial Statements and Restatement

The basic financial statements of the Denton County Transportation Authority as of and for the year ended September 30, 2020 were audited by a predecessor auditor, which expressed an unmodified opinion on the basic financial statements. The predecessor auditor's report was dated March 2, 2021.

To the Board of Directors
Denton County Transportation Authority

Required Supplemental Information

Accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America require that the management's discussion and analysis and other required supplemental information, as identified in the table of contents, be presented to supplement the basic financial statements. Such information, although not a part of the basic financial statements, is required by the Governmental Accounting Standards Board, which considers it to be an essential part of financial reporting for placing the basic financial statements in an appropriate operational, economic, or historical context. We have applied certain limited procedures to the required supplemental information in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America, which consisted of inquiries of management about the methods of preparing the information and comparing the information for consistency with management's responses to our inquiries, the basic financial statements, and other knowledge we obtained during our audit of the basic financial statements. We do not express an opinion or provide any assurance on the information because the limited procedures do not provide us with sufficient evidence to express an opinion or provide any assurance.

Other Information

Our audit was conducted for the purpose of forming an opinion on the financial statements that collectively comprise the Denton County Transportation Authority's basic financial statements. The other supplemental information, as identified in the table of contents, and introductory and statistical sections are presented for the purpose of additional analysis and are not a required part of the basic financial statements.

The other supplemental information is the responsibility of management and was derived from and relates directly to the underlying accounting and other records used to prepare the basic financial statements. Such information has been subjected to the auditing procedures applied in the audit of the basic financial statements and certain additional procedures, including comparing and reconciling such information directly to the underlying accounting and other records used to prepare the basic financial statements or to the basic financial statements themselves, and other additional procedures in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America. In our opinion, the other supplemental information is fairly stated in all material respects in relation to the basic financial statements as a whole.

The introductory and statistical sections have not been subjected to the auditing procedures applied in the audit of the basic financial statements, and, accordingly, we do not express an opinion or provide any assurance on them.

Other Reporting Required by Government Auditing Standards

In accordance with *Government Auditing Standards*, we have also issued our report dated February 9, 2022 on our consideration of the Denton County Transportation Authority's internal control over financial reporting and on our tests of its compliance with certain provisions of laws, regulations, contracts, grant agreements, and other matters. The purpose of that report is solely to describe the scope of our testing of internal control over financial reporting and compliance and the results of that testing, and not to provide an opinion on the effectiveness of the Authority's internal control over financial reporting or on compliance. That report is an integral part of an audit performed in accordance with *Government Auditing Standards* in considering the Denton County Transportation Authority's internal control over financial reporting and compliance.

Plante & Moran, PLLC

February 9, 2022

Management's Discussion and Analysis

The management of the Denton County Transportation Authority (DCTA or the "Authority") offers readers of the DCTA's financial statements this narrative overview and analysis of the financial activities for the fiscal year ended September 30, 2021. This discussion and analysis is designed to provide an objective and easily readable analysis of DCTA's financial activities based on currently known facts, decisions, or conditions.

We encourage the readers to consider the information presented here in conjunction with accompanying financial statements, notes thereto, and additional information that is furnished in our letter of transmittal and the statistical section of this report. In addition, readers are encouraged to review information on the annual budget and other agency information found on the DCTA website at www.dcta.net. It should be noted that the independent auditor's report describes the auditor's association with the various sections of the report and that all of the additional information from the website and other DCTA sources is unaudited and has not been updated for events that may have occurred subsequent to the issuance of the respective report.

Financial Highlights

- As of September 30, 2021 and 2020, total assets and deferred outflows of resources of DCTA exceeded total liabilities and deferred inflows of resources by \$361,643,543 and \$341,283,144, respectively. The amount of unrestricted net position as of September 30, 2021 was \$77,781,215 compared to \$50,683,527 in 2020. Unrestricted net position is the amount that may be used to meet DCTA's ongoing obligations in accordance with the fiscal policies.
- Net position increased \$20,360,399 during the current fiscal year compared to an increase of \$13,482,349 in
 the prior year. The change compared to the prior year is attributable to a \$1.4 million decrease in operating
 expenses as well as a \$5.5 million increase in sales tax revenue and \$2.8 million increase in operating grants,
 mainly related to one-time operating assistance reimbursements from the Coronavirus Aid, Relief, and
 Economic Security (CARES) Act, partially offset by a decrease in capital grants of \$2.1 million.
- Net capital assets were \$305.2 million as of September 30, 2021 compared to \$314.0 million as of September 30, 2020. The decrease of \$8.8 million is caused by \$10.0 million of depreciation expense, offset by \$1.2 million of asset additions.

Overview of the Financial Statements

This discussion and analysis is intended to serve as an introduction to DCTA's accompanying financial statements and notes. The basic financial statements consist of four components: (1) statement of net position; (2) statement of revenue, expenses, and changes in net position; (3) statement of cash flows; and (4) notes to the financial statements.

This report also contains other supplemental information in addition to the basic financial statements themselves, as well as a statistical section (unaudited) to provide the reader additional information relative to DCTA.

DCTA activities are accounted for in a single enterprise fund; therefore, government-wide financial statements are not presented. Enterprise funds are generally used to report business-type activities of governmental entities. The financial statements are prepared on the accrual basis of accounting, meaning that all expenses are recorded when incurred, and all revenue is recognized when earned in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America. Certain statements in the report are, or will be, forward-looking statements. Forward-looking statements should not be read as a guarantee of future performance or results and are subject to risks and uncertainties that could cause actual performance or results to differ materially from those expressed in the statements.

Statement of Net Position

The statement of net position reports all of the financial and capital resources of DCTA. The statement is presented in the format where total assets plus deferred outflows of resources equal total liabilities, deferred inflows of resources, and net position. Assets and liabilities are presented in order of liquidity and are classified as current (convertible into cash within one year) and noncurrent. The focus of the statement of net position is to show a picture of the liquidity and health of the organization as of the end of the reporting period. Changes in net position may serve as an indication of whether the financial position of DCTA is improving or deteriorating.

Management's Discussion and Analysis (Continued)

Statement of Revenue, Expenses, and Changes in Net Position

The statement of revenue, expenses, and changes in net position is similar to an income statement. This statement includes operating revenue, such as passenger fares and contracts to provide transit-related service to third parties; operating expenses, such as costs of operating the transit system, administrative expenses, and depreciation on capital assets; and nonoperating revenue and expenses, such as sales tax revenue, grant revenue, and interest income. The focus of the statement of revenue, expenses, and changes in net position is to present the change in net position during the two most recent fiscal years. The increase or decrease in net position will show the effect of DCTA's current year operations on its financial position.

Statement of Cash Flows

The statement of cash flows discloses net cash provided by or used in operating activities, noncapital financing activities, capital and related financing activities, and investing activities. The statement of cash flows, related notes, and other financial statements can be used to assess DCTA's ability to provide adequate cash flow to support current operations and plans for future expansion.

Notes and Other Information

The notes to the financial statements are an integral part of the basic financial statements that describe the significant accounting policies and provide additional information that is essential to understanding the data provided in the financial statements.

Financial Analysis

Statement of Net Position

As noted earlier, net position, and especially net position by category, may serve over time as a useful indicator of DCTA's financial position. Total assets and deferred outflows of resources exceeded total liabilities and deferred inflows of resources by \$361,643,543 and \$341,283,144 as of September 30, 2021 and 2020, respectively. The largest portion, 78 percent and 85 percent in 2021 and 2020, respectively, is net investment in capital assets primarily related to the rail line construction and acquisition of rail vehicles. The remaining 22 percent and 15 percent, respectively, is in unrestricted net position, which represents assets with no external restriction as to use or purpose. The unrestricted net position can be employed for any lawful purpose designated by the governing board.

Net position of DCTA increased 6.0 percent, or \$20,360,399, during the current fiscal year compared to an increase of 4.1 percent, or \$13,482,349, in the prior year. The increase in net position in the current fiscal year is mainly attributable to a \$26.4 million increase in current and other assets and a \$2.7 million decrease in liabilities, partially offset by a \$8.8 million decrease in capital assets.

Management's Discussion and Analysis (Continued)

| The Authority's Net Position | 2021 | 2020 | 2019 |
|--|---------------------------------|------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| Assets Current and other assets Capital assets | \$ 81,540,801 305,229,605 | \$ 55,142,924 \$ 314,019,761 | 38,234,115 319,554,318 |
| Total assets | 386,770,406 | 369,162,685 | 357,788,433 |
| Deferred Outflows of Resources | 421,130 | 290,447 | 369,652 |
| Liabilities Current liabilities Noncurrent liabilities | 5,830,011 19,565,492 | 5,894,892 22,205,000 | 5,940,322 24,369,285 |
| Total liabilities | 25,395,503 | 28,099,892 | 30,309,607 |
| Deferred Inflows of Resources | 152,490 | 70,096 | 47,683 |
| Net Position Net investment in capital assets Unrestricted | 283,862,328 77,781,215 | 290,599,617 50,683,527 | 294,293,446 33,507,349 |
| Total net position | \$ 361,643,543 | \$ 341,283,144 \$ | 327,800,795 |

Assets

During fiscal year 2021, DCTA's total assets increased 4.8 percent, or \$17.6 million, from fiscal year 2020. The net increase is mainly attributable to a \$24.8 million increase in cash and investments, offset by a \$8.8 million decrease in capital assets.

Capital assets, net of depreciation, decreased due to a net \$1.2 million of asset additions for bus fleet replacement and the Positive Train Control project, offset by \$10.0 million of depreciation. The capital assets activity for the year is captured in Note 6 (page 20).

Liabilities

Current liabilities decreased slightly during the year from \$5.9 million as of September 30, 2020 to \$5.8 million as of September 30, 2021 primarily due to minor fluctuations in accounts payable, accrued expenses, and bonds payable.

DCTA's current ratio, current assets of \$80,843,078 and current liabilities of \$5,830,011, was 14:1 as of September 30, 2021, compared to a ratio of 9:1 as of September 30, 2020.

There was a \$2.6 million decrease in noncurrent liabilities in fiscal year 2021 due primarily to payments made for DCTA's outstanding bonds and the rail operating easement agreement with DART. The bond payable activity for the year and rail operating easement obligation are captured in Notes 7 and 11 (pages 22 and 29).

Statement of Revenues, Expenses, and Changes in Net Position

During fiscal year 2021, DCTA's activities resulted in an increase in net position of \$20,360,399 compared to an increase of \$13,482,349 in the prior year. The increase in the current fiscal year net position is mainly attributable to a decrease of \$1.4 million in operating expenses and increases of \$5.5 million in sales tax revenue and \$2.8 million in operating grants, offset by a decrease of \$2.1 million in capital grants. The changes in net position for the fiscal years ended September 30, 2021, 2020, and 2019 are shown in the following table.

Management's Discussion and Analysis (Continued)

| The Authorit | y's Changes | s in Net Position |
|--------------|-------------|-------------------|
| | | |

| | 2021 | 2020 | 2019 |
|--|--------------------|----------------|--------------|
| Operating Revenue | \$ 3,931,563 \$ | 4,639,923 \$ | 5,769,167 |
| Operating Expenses | 39,323,018 | 40,694,995 | 43,231,721 |
| Operating Loss | (35,391,455) | (36,055,072) | (37,462,554) |
| Nonoperating Revenue (Expense) | 54,342,431 | 46,064,745 | 35,043,469 |
| (Loss) Income - Before capital contributions | 18,950,976 | 10,009,673 | (2,419,085) |
| Capital Contributions | 1,409,423 | 3,472,676 | 4,187,777 |
| Change in Net Position | 20,360,399 | 13,482,349 | 1,768,692 |
| Net Position - Beginning of year | 341,283,144 | 327,800,795 | 326,032,103 |
| Net Position - End of year | \$ 361,643,543 | 341,283,144 \$ | 327,800,795 |
| | | | |

Operating Revenue

Passenger Revenue

The fiscal year 2021 passenger revenue decreased 34 percent, or \$286,000, from fiscal year 2020 due primarily to a 46 percent decrease in bus and rail ridership in light of the COVID-19 pandemic and related stay-at-home orders and mandatory closures of nonessential businesses. This impact was common for all public transportation, as officials encouraged people to stay home and encouraged employers to allow telecommuting.

Contract Service

The fiscal year 2021 contract service revenue decreased 13 percent, or \$456,000, from the prior year. In fiscal year 2021, DCTA provided service for University of North Texas (UNT); the City of Frisco, Texas; and the McKinney Urban Transit District (MUTD), while service for North Central Texas College (NCTC) ended in fiscal year 2020. These contracts include a combination of DCTA-provided service, as well as Lyft and taxi services, which are billed as pass-through costs with an associated administrative fee. Contract service revenue decreased due to a 19 percent reduction in service hours from the prior year in relation to the COVID-19 pandemic but was partially offset by increased usage of Lyft and taxi services.

Operating Expenses

The fiscal year 2021 operating expenses decreased 3 percent, or \$1.4 million, from fiscal year 2020. Salaries and benefits decreased \$1.6 million due to an administrative staff reduction in force in May 2020 and bus service reductions implemented in response to reduced ridership. Expenses for materials and supplies decreased \$835,000 primarily due to statement of net position recognition of bus parts inventory in fiscal year 2021. Outsourced services expenses, however, increased by \$511,000 mainly due to a professional services contract for the Board-led Transformation Initiative. Depreciation expense increased 4 percent, or \$398,000, from the prior year mainly due to the capitalization of PTC implementation in fiscal year 2021.

Nonoperating Revenue and Expenses

Sales Tax Revenue

The fiscal year 2021 sales tax revenue increased 18 percent, or \$5.5 million, over fiscal year 2020. DCTA collects 0.5 percent sales and use tax in the member cities of Denton, Highland Village, and Lewisville. Consumer spending continued to increase during fiscal year 2021, and DCTA and its member cities experienced growth in sales tax revenue similar to the expansion experienced throughout the state.

Management's Discussion and Analysis (Continued)

Capital Grants

Grants for capital improvements decreased \$2.1 million from the prior year. This decrease is primarily a result of a one-time reimbursement for infrastructure acquisition in Old Town Lewisville in fiscal year 2020, offset by increased reimbursable expenses for bus fleet replacement in fiscal year 2021.

Transit System Operating Assistance Grants

The fiscal year 2021 federal and state grant revenue increased \$2.8 million over fiscal year 2020 revenue mainly due to one-time operating assistance reimbursements from the Coronavirus Aid, Relief, and Economic Security (CARES) Act.

Investment Income

The fiscal year 2021 investment income of \$31,000 was a decrease of 90 percent from fiscal year 2020 revenue of \$321,000. The average yield to maturity continued to decline during the fiscal year from 0.27 percent at September 30, 2020 to 0.043 percent as of September 30, 2021, as interest rates remained low throughout fiscal year 2021 in response to the COVID-19 pandemic. DCTA continues to build up reserve funds in accordance with the board's reserve policy, and staff will look to diversifying and laddering the investment portfolio to improve yield through investment vehicles such as U.S. Treasury notes and U.S. agency securities.

Debt Administration

In June 2008, DCTA completed its first debt issuance by issuing \$20,000,000 in tax-exempt Sales Tax Revenue Bonds. The bonds were issued through a private placement with a maximum 5-year term to fund the DCTA A-train regional passenger rail project, which provides passenger rail service connecting Denton and Dallas counties. The principal payment was due in one lump sum in June 2013, with interest due semiannually.

The Series 2008 Sales Tax Revenue bonds were refunded through a private placement to long-term debt on December 17, 2009. These bonds will be repaid over 20 years at an interest rate of 3.99 percent. The first principal payment of \$885,000 was paid in September 2013 and annual installments continue through September 2029.

The Series 2009 Sales Tax Revenue Refunding bonds were refunded in November 2020. These bonds will be repaid over 12 years at an interest rate of 0.99 percent with principal payments due annually through September 2032.

In September 2011, DCTA issued \$14,390,000 in contractual obligations for a portion of its share of the cost for new rail vehicles and for the first phase of the federally mandated PTC project. These obligations were issued through a private placement to be repaid over 20 years at an interest rate of 3.13 percent. The first principal payment of \$140,000 was paid in September 2015, and annual installments continue through September 2031.

The 2011 contractual obligations were refunded in September 2021. These bonds will be repaid over 10 years at an interest rate of 1.28 percent, with principal payments due annually through September 2031.

Requests for Further Information

This financial report is intended to provide a general overview of the Authority's finances and demonstrate the Authority's accountability for the money it receives. If you have questions about this report or need additional information, please contact DCTA at 1955 Lakeway Drive, Suite 260, Lewisville, TX 75057; by phone at (972) 221-4600; or by electronic mail at info@dcta.net.

Basic Financial Statements

Statement of Net Position

| | September 30, 2021 and 2020 | | | |
|--|-----------------------------|-------------|----|-------------|
| | | 2021 | _ | 2020 |
| Assets | | | | |
| Current assets: | | | | |
| Cash and cash equivalents (Note 4) | \$ | 59,281,187 | \$ | 38,923,553 |
| Investments (Note 4) | | 9,537,185 | | 5,064,346 |
| Receivables (Note 5) | | 10,848,224 | | 10,064,934 |
| Inventory | | 719,857 | | 29,805 |
| Prepaid expenses | | 456,625 | _ | 194,441 |
| Total current assets | | 80,843,078 | | 54,277,079 |
| Noncurrent assets: | | | | |
| Restricted cash | | 697,723 | | 839,856 |
| Net pension asset (Note 9) | | - | | 25,989 |
| Capital assets: (Note 6) | | | | |
| Assets not subject to depreciation | | 20,159,336 | | 37,408,478 |
| Assets subject to depreciation - Net | | 285,070,269 | | 276,611,283 |
| Total noncurrent assets | | 305,927,328 | _ | 314,885,606 |
| Total assets | | 386,770,406 | | 369,162,685 |
| Deferred Outflows of Resources - Deferred pension costs (Note 9) | | 421,130 | | 290,447 |
| Liabilities | | | | |
| Current liabilities: | | | | |
| Accounts payable | | 2,076,049 | | 2,128,514 |
| Accrued liabilities and other | | 1,135,862 | | 1,654,920 |
| Unearned revenue | | 53,100 | | 56,458 |
| Current portion of easement obligation (Note 11) | | 100,000 | | 100,000 |
| Current portion of bonds payable (Note 7) | | 2,465,000 | | 1,955,000 |
| Total current liabilities | | 5,830,011 | | 5,894,892 |
| Noncurrent liabilities: | | | | |
| Easement obligation - Net of current portion (Note 11) | | 700,000 | | 800,000 |
| Net pension liability (Note 9) | | 65,492 | | - |
| Bonds payable, net of current portion (Note 7) | _ | 18,800,000 | | 21,405,000 |
| Total noncurrent liabilities | | 19,565,492 | _ | 22,205,000 |
| Total liabilities | | 25,395,503 | | 28,099,892 |
| Deferred Inflows of Resources - Deferred pension cost reductions (Note 9) | | 152,490 | _ | 70,096 |
| Net Position | | | | |
| Net investment in capital assets | | 283,862,328 | | 290,599,617 |
| Unrestricted | | 77,781,215 | _ | 50,683,527 |
| Total net position | \$ | 361,643,543 | \$ | 341,283,144 |

Statement of Revenues, Expenses, and Changes in Net Position

Years Ended September 30, 2021 and 2020

| | | 2021 | | 2020 |
|--|----|---|-----|--|
| Operating Revenues Passenger revenue Contract services Other | \$ | 548,078 2,923,277 460,208 | \$ | 833,637 3,378,826 427,460 |
| Total operating revenues | | 3,931,563 | | 4,639,923 |
| Operating Expenses Salaries, wages, and benefits Outsourced services and charges Materials and supplies Purchased transportation services Utilities Insurance Leases and rentals Employee development Transportation reinvestment program Depreciation | | 9,973,967 5,395,088 1,087,451 10,302,946 431,998 1,822,821 224,889 97,423 29,798 9,956,637 | . — | 11,609,934 4,884,281 1,922,266 10,091,453 431,838 1,783,994 226,632 185,783 - 9,558,814 |
| Total operating expenses | _ | 39,323,018 | | 40,694,995 |
| Operating Loss | | (35,391,455) | | (36,055,072) |
| Nonoperating Revenue (Expense) Investment income Gain (loss) on sale of assets Sales tax revenue Transit system operating assistance grants Interest expense | | 31,178 42,344 35,332,154 19,633,941 (697,186) | | 320,793 (7,482) 29,817,365 16,843,203 (909,134) |
| Total nonoperating revenue | | 54,342,431 | | 46,064,745 |
| Income - Before capital contributions | | 18,950,976 | | 10,009,673 |
| Capital Contributions - Capital grants | | 1,409,423 | | 3,472,676 |
| Change in Net Position | | 20,360,399 | | 13,482,349 |
| Net Position - Beginning of year | _ | 341,283,144 | | 327,800,795 |
| Net Position - End of year | \$ | 361,643,543 | \$ | 341,283,144 |

Statement of Cash Flows

Years Ended September 30, 2021 and 2020

| | 2021 | | 2020 |
|---|--|---|---|
| Cash Flows from Operating Activities Receipts from customers Payments to suppliers Payments to employees and benefits | \$ 3,909,156 \$ (20,267,338) (9,958,574) | 6 | 5,344,945 (19,627,183) (11,557,058) |
| Net cash and cash equivalents used in operating activities | (26,316,756) | | (25,839,296) |
| Cash Flows from Noncapital Financing Activities Operating grants and subsidies Sales tax received | 18,741,443 34,529,445 | | 14,212,860 29,259,386 |
| Net cash and cash equivalents provided by noncapital financing activities | 53,270,888 | | 43,472,246 |
| Cash Flows from Capital and Related Financing Activities Issuance of bonds Receipt of capital grants Proceeds from sale of capital assets Purchase of capital assets Principal and interest paid on capital debt, including refunding | 22,870,000 2,340,389 52,344 (1,797,517) (25,762,186) | | 3,480,939 68,124 (4,084,232) (2,879,134) |
| Net cash and cash equivalents used in capital and related financing activities | (2,296,970) | | (3,414,303) |
| Cash Flows from Investing Activities Interest received on investments Purchases of investment securities Proceeds from sale and maturities of investment securities | 31,178 (4,472,839) - | | 320,793 (5,053,745) 5,000,000 |
| Net cash and cash equivalents (used in) provided by investing activities | (4,441,661) | | 267,048 |
| Net Increase in Cash and Cash Equivalents | 20,215,501 | | 14,485,695 |
| Cash and Cash Equivalents - Beginning of year | 39,763,409 | | 25,277,714 |
| Cash and Cash Equivalents - End of year | \$ 59,978,910 | 5 | 39,763,409 |
| Classification of Cash and Cash Equivalents Cash and cash equivalents Restricted cash | \$ 59,281,187 \$ 697,723 | 6 | 38,923,553 839,856 |
| Total cash and cash equivalents | \$ 59,978,910 | 5 | 39,763,409 |

Statement of Cash Flows (Continued)

Years Ended September 30, 2021 and 2020

| | _ | 2021 | 2020 |
|---|----|---|--|
| Reconciliation of Operating Loss to Net Cash from Operating Activities Operating loss Adjustments to reconcile operating loss to net cash from operating activities: | \$ | (35,391,455) \$ | (36,055,072) |
| Depreciation | | 9,956,637 | 9,558,814 |
| Changes in assets and liabilities: Receivables Inventory Prepaid and other assets Net pension asset/liability and related deferrals Accounts payable Accrued and other liabilities Unearned revenue | | (19,049) (690,052) (262,184) 53,023 77,312 (37,630) (3,358) | 743,247 18,474 74,958 (33,656) (194,368) 86,532 (38,225) |
| Net cash and cash equivalents used in operating activities | \$ | (26,316,756) \$ | (25,839,296) |

Notes to Financial Statements

September 30, 2021 and 2020

Note 1 - Significant Accounting Policies

Reporting Entity

The Denton County Transportation Authority (DCTA) is a coordinated county transportation authority of the State of Texas, created pursuant to Chapter 460 of the Texas Transportation Code. This legislation requires that a service plan, an outline of the services that could be provided by an authority confirmed by the voters, be developed by the transit authority. A service plan was developed and the Authority was confirmed by a public referendum held on November 5, 2002. A second election was held in eight municipalities on September 13, 2003 for consideration and approval of a 0.5 percent sales and use tax. The sales and use tax and associated service plan passed in three cities: Denton, Highland Village, and Lewisville. Collection of the sales tax began on January 1, 2004.

The Authority is governed by an 11-member board of directors. As of September 30, 2021, the board was composed of the following:

- 1. One voting member appointed by the governing body of each of the following cities: Denton, Highland Village, and Lewisville
- 2. Two voting members appointed by the Denton County Commissioner's Court
- 3. Six non-voting members designated by the remaining Denton County cities

The accompanying financial statements present the Authority and its component unit, an entity for which the Authority is considered to be financially accountable. The blended component unit is, in substance, part of the Authority's operations, even though it is a separate legal entity.

Blended Component Unit

The North Texas Mobility Corporation (NTMC) was incorporated on April 1, 2019 and is governed by a five-member board appointed by the Authority's board of directors. Although it is legally separate from the Authority, NTMC is reported as if it were part of the Authority because its sole purpose is to manage and operate transit services for the Authority. Separate financial statements are not available, but condensed financial information for NTMC can be found in Note 12.

Accounting and Reporting Principles

The Authority follows accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America (GAAP), as applicable to governmental units. Accounting and financial reporting pronouncements are promulgated by the Governmental Accounting Standards Board. The following is a summary of the significant accounting policies used by the Authority:

Report Presentation

This report includes the statements of the Authority. In accordance with government accounting principles, a government-wide presentation with program and general revenue is not applicable to special purpose governments engaged only in business-type activities.

Fund Accounting

Proprietary Funds

Proprietary funds include enterprise funds (which provide goods or services to users in exchange for charges or fees). The Authority reports all activity in a single enterprise fund. Activity reported in this fund includes the blended component unit, NTMC. NTMC is used to account for all employee-related operations associated with bus services provided by NTMC.

Basis of Accounting

Proprietary funds use the economic resources measurement focus and the full accrual basis of accounting. Revenue is recorded when earned, and expenses are recorded when a liability is incurred, regardless of the timing of related cash flows.

Notes to Financial Statements

September 30, 2021 and 2020

Note 1 - Significant Accounting Policies (Continued)

Specific Balances and Transactions

Cash and Cash Equivalents

Cash and cash equivalents include cash on hand, demand deposits, and short-term investments with a maturity of three months or less when acquired.

Investments

Investments are reported at fair value or estimated fair value. Short-term investments are reported at cost, which approximates fair value. The investment policies of the Authority are governed by the Public Funds Investment Act, Chapter 2256 of the Texas Government Code. The Authority's funds are managed and invested based on safety, liquidity, diversification, and yield.

Receivables

Receivables consist primarily of amounts due to the Authority from sales tax collections, federal grants, and customer billings. Management does not believe any credit risk exists related to these receivables. Management evaluates the receivables to determine if an allowance for doubtful accounts should be established and considers the collection history, the aging of the accounts, and other specific information known to management that may affect collectibility. Based upon this assessment, management has determined that an allowance is not necessary.

Inventories

The Authority purchases and maintains its own fuel inventory and maintenance and repair parts. Fuel inventory is valued by volume on a monthly basis using a first-in, first-out inventory costing method. Parts inventory is valued by average cost.

Prepaid Items

Certain payments to vendors reflect costs applicable to future fiscal years and are recorded as prepaid expenses. These expenses consist primarily of insurance payments, which are amortized over the policy period, and prepaid rents.

Restricted Assets

Restricted assets consist of unspent bonds and are held as cash and cash equivalents.

Capital Assets

Capital assets are defined by the Authority as assets that:

- 1. Have an initial individual cost of more than \$5,000 and an estimated useful life in excess of one year
- 2. Have an individual cost of \$5,000 or less but are part of a network or combined unit of property
- 3. Facilities or equipment with a useful life of at least one year, which are eligible for capital assistance, and paid for with grant funding

Such assets are recorded at historical cost or estimated historical cost if purchased or constructed. Donated capital assets are recorded at estimated acquisition value at the date of donation.

Interest incurred during the construction of capital assets is included as part of the capitalized value of the assets constructed.

Notes to Financial Statements

September 30, 2021 and 2020

Note 1 - Significant Accounting Policies (Continued)

Capital assets are depreciated using the straight-line method over the following useful lives:

| | Depreciable Life - Years |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Rail system | 20-50 |
| Land improvements | 25 |
| Vehicles: | |
| Bus | 5-12 |
| Paratransit | 4-5 |
| Rail | 50 |
| Furniture and equipment | 3-7 |
| Easement | 20 |

Except for sales of assets in which the unit fair value is less than \$5,000, proceeds from the sale of property, facilities, and equipment purchased with funds provided by federal grants for capital expenditures are remitted to the Federal Transit Administration (FTA) on the same percentage basis that such funds were provided by grant contracts with the FTA.

The transit system operated by the Authority includes certain facilities owned by others. The Authority has contractual rights to operate these facilities under the terms of the authorizing legislation and other agreements.

Intangible assets are stated at historical cost net of accumulated amortization. The intangible asset consists of a rail operating easement for the purpose of constructing, installing, maintaining, and operating a modern rail passenger system.

Current Liabilities

The Authority has not formally restricted cash funds to pay current operating liabilities but has adequate cash and investments to satisfy these obligations. Construction contracts payable will be satisfied with unrestricted cash.

Unearned Revenue

The University of North Texas (UNT) and North Central Texas College (NCTC) have contracted with the Authority to provide transportation for faculty, staff, and students through the Connect service. The universities have paid for this service in advance and, in addition, the Authority sells semester and annual passes. The Authority recognizes the revenue through straight-line amortization over the respective period. The contract with NCTC expired on July 31, 2020. The Retreat at Denton also contracts with DCTA to provide transportation to its residents through the Connect service.

Long-term Obligations

In the financial statements, long-term debt and other long-term obligations are reported as liabilities in the statement of net position. Bond issuance costs are expensed at the time they are incurred.

Deferred Outflows/Inflows of Resources

In addition to assets, the statement of net position will sometimes report a separate section for deferred outflows of resources. This separate financial statement element represents a consumption of net position that applies to future periods and will not be recognized as an outflow of resources (expense) until then. The Authority reports deferred outflows related to the defined benefit pension plan, as further described in Note 9.

Notes to Financial Statements

September 30, 2021 and 2020

Note 1 - Significant Accounting Policies (Continued)

In addition to liabilities, the statement of net position and will sometimes report a separate section for deferred inflows of resources. This separate financial statement element represents an acquisition of net position that applies to future periods and will not be recognized as an inflow of resources (revenue) until that time. The Authority reports deferred inflows related to the defined benefit pension plan, as further described in Note 9.

Net Position

Net position of the Authority can be classified in three components. Net investment in capital assets consists of capital assets net of accumulated depreciation and is reduced by the current balances of any outstanding borrowings used to finance the purchase or construction of those assets. The restricted component of net position can consist of restricted assets reduced by liabilities and deferred inflows of resources related to those assets. Unrestricted net position is the remaining net position that does not meet the definition of invested in capital or restricted.

Net Position Flow Assumption

The Authority will sometimes fund outlays for a particular purpose from both restricted and unrestricted resources. In order to calculate the amounts to report as restricted net position and unrestricted net position in the financial statements, a flow assumption must be made about the order in which the resources are considered to be applied. It is the Authority's policy to consider restricted net position to have been depleted before unrestricted net position is applied.

Pension

For the purpose of measuring the net pension liability, deferred outflows of resources and deferred inflows of resources related to pensions, and pension expense, information about the fiduciary net position of the Texas County and District Retirement System (TCDRS) and additions to/deductions from the TCDRS fiduciary net position have been determined on the same basis as they are reported by TCDRS. TCDRS uses the economic resources measurement focus and the full accrual basis of accounting. Contribution revenue is recorded as contributions are due, pursuant to legal requirements. Benefit payments (including refunds of employee contributions) are recognized as expenses when due and payable in accordance with the plan benefit terms. Related plan investments are reported at fair value.

Compensated Absences

Employees receive compensation for vacations, holidays, illness, personal days, and certain other qualifying absences. The number of days compensated for the various categories of absence is based on length of service. Sick and vacation days that have been earned, but not paid, have been accrued in the accompanying financial statements. Compensation for holidays and other qualifying absences is not accrued in the accompanying financial statements, as rights to such compensation do not accumulate or vest. The liability for compensated absences is classified as an accrued liability.

Proprietary Funds Operating Classification

Proprietary funds distinguish operating revenue and expenses from nonoperating items. Operating revenue and expenses generally result from providing services in connection with a proprietary fund's principal ongoing operations. The principal operating revenue of the Authority is the sale of transit services. Passenger revenue consists of farebox collections and the sale of passes. Contract service revenue is related to providing transit services to third parties on a contractual basis. The Authority provides contract services for UNT; NCTC; the City of Frisco, Texas; the McKinney Urban Transit District; the City of Coppell, Texas; and Trinity Metro. The contract with NCTC expired on July 31, 2020.

Operating expenses for these funds include the cost of sales or services and administrative expenses and may include depreciation on capital assets. All revenue and expenses not meeting this definition are reported as nonoperating revenue and expenses.

Notes to Financial Statements

September 30, 2021 and 2020

Note 1 - Significant Accounting Policies (Continued)

Use of Estimates

The preparation of financial statements in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America requires management to make estimates and assumptions that affect the reported amounts of assets and liabilities and disclosure of contingent assets and liabilities at the date of the financial statements and the reported amounts of revenue and expenses during the period. Actual results could differ from those estimates.

Reclassifications

Certain amounts presented in the prior year data have been reclassified in order to be consistent with the current year's presentation. The changes to fiscal year 2020 consist of a reclassification of \$9,931 from restricted cash to unrestricted cash, the breakout of \$1,654,920 of accrued liabilities and other from accounts payable, and the inclusion of \$621,036 of retainage payable in accounts payable. The net investment in capital assets was increased by \$621,036 to exclude retainage payable, and unrestricted net position was reduced by the same amount.

Reporting Change

In 2021, the Authority determined the North Texas Mobility Corporation should be combined with the Authority as opposed to presented as a separate enterprise fund. This change was applied to the 2020 financial statements as well. There was no impact to net position, as NTMC had zero net position.

Upcoming Accounting Pronouncements

In June 2017, the Governmental Accounting Standards Board issued Statement No. 87, *Leases*, which improves accounting and financial reporting for leases by governments. This statement requires recognition of certain lease assets and liabilities for leases that previously were classified as operating leases and recognized as inflows of resources or outflows of resources based on the payment provisions of the contract. It establishes a single model for lease accounting based on the foundational principle that leases are financings of the right to use an underlying asset. Under this statement, a lessee is required to recognize a lease liability and an intangible right-to-use lease asset, and a lessor is required to recognize a lease receivable and a deferred inflow of resources. The Authority is currently evaluating the impact this standard will have on the financial statements when adopted. The provisions of this statement were originally effective for the Authority's financial statements for the year ended September 30, 2021 but were extended to September 30, 2022 with the issuance of GASB Statement No. 95, *Postponement of the Effective Date of Certain Authoritative Guidance*.

In January 2020, the GASB issued Statement No. 92, *Omnibus 2020*. This statement addresses eight unrelated practice issues and technical inconsistencies in authoritative literature. The standard addresses leases, intraentity transfers of assets, postemployment benefits, government acquisitions, risk financing and insurance-related activities of public entity risk pools, fair value measurements, and derivative instruments. The standard has various effective dates. The Authority does not believe this pronouncement will have a significant impact on its financial statements but is still making a full evaluation.

In May 2020, the Governmental Accounting Standards Board issued Statement No. 96, Subscription-Based Information Technology Arrangements (SBITAs), which defines SBITAs and provides accounting and financial reporting for SBITAs by governments. This statement requires a government to recognize a subscription liability and an intangible right-to-use subscription asset for SBITAs. The Authority is currently evaluating the impact this standard will have on the financial statements when adopted. The provisions of this statement are effective for the Authority's financial statements for the year ending September 30, 2023.

Notes to Financial Statements

September 30, 2021 and 2020

2020

2021

Note 1 - Significant Accounting Policies (Continued)

In June 2020, the Governmental Accounting Standards Board issued Statement No. 97, Certain Component Unit Criteria, and Accounting and Financial Reporting for Internal Revenue Code Section 457 Deferred Compensation Plans. While this standard had certain aspects impacting defined contribution pension and OPEB plans and other employee benefit plans that were effective immediately, it also clarifies when a 457 should be considered a pension plan or an other employee benefit plan to assist in the application of GASB Statement No. 84 to these types of plans. The Authority is currently evaluating the impact this standard will have on the financial statements when adopted. The provisions of this statement related to 457 plans are effective for the Authority's financial statements for the year ending September 30, 2022.

Note 2 - Stewardship, Compliance, and Accountability

Budgetary Information

Section 460 of the Texas Transportation Code requires the Authority to create an annual budget. The Authority maintains control over operating expenditures by the establishment of the annual operating budget. Budgets are prepared on the accrual basis consistent with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America. Annual proposed operating and capital budgets are prepared by management, presented to Denton County residents at public meetings, and reviewed by the board of directors prior to adoption of the final budget in September. The operating and capital budgets follow the same preparation and review cycle.

Operating budget appropriations terminate at the end of the fiscal year. Capital budget amounts are not included in the accompanying financial statements. Capital budget amounts are budgeted over the life of the respective project, not on an annual basis.

During the course of the annual budget cycle, it may be necessary to modify the budget by a process of amendment or transfer. For example, modifications may be required because of changes in the purpose, description, terms and conditions, or changes in the cost of an approved service or item. All budget amendments require approval by the board of directors. Budget transfers may be authorized by the Authority's President/CEO and reported to the board. The board of directors monitors, reviews, and accepts the monthly and year to date unaudited financial statements with budget comparisons and explanations of material variances.

Note 3 - Service Agreement

On October 1, 2016, DCTA entered into a contract with First Transit Inc. for rail operations and maintenance. This contract includes management fees, maintenance of way, vehicle maintenance, train hours and car miles. The contract is accounted for under purchased transportation services. On October 31, 2020, Rio Grande Pacific Corporation assumed the contract in place of First Transit Inc. As of September 30, 2021, \$10,393,283 was spent on this contract, and the remaining commitment was \$63,317,465. Additionally, DCTA and the Dallas Area Rapid Transit (DART) entered into an interlocal operating agreement for ticket vending machine services and train platform maintenance.

Note 4 - Deposits and Investments

Deposits and investments are reported in the financial statements as follows:

| | | | _ | |
|---|-----------|------------------------------------|----|------------------------------------|
| Cash and cash equivalents Investments Restricted cash and investments | \$ | 59,281,187 9,537,185 697,723 | \$ | 38,923,553 5,064,346 839,856 |
| Total deposits and investments | <u>\$</u> | 69,516,095 | \$ | 44,827,755 |

Notes to Financial Statements

September 30, 2021 and 2020

Note 4 - Deposits and Investments (Continued)

The Authority's cash and investments are subject to several types of risk, which are examined in more detail below:

Custodial Credit Risk of Bank Deposits

Custodial credit risk is the risk that in the event of a bank failure, the Authority's deposits may not be returned to it. The Authority's cash and cash equivalents are deposited in various accounts, as allowed by the Texas Public Funds Investment Act and the Authority's investment policy. Balances for these accounts are insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation, and the deposits in excess of the insured amount are collateralized at 105 percent of the market value of the principal and accrued interest by pledged book entry securities held in a securities account at a federal reserve bank in the Authority's name by a third party or were invested in U.S. government securities, as allowed by the Texas Public Funds Investment Act.

Interest Rate Risk

Interest rate risk is the risk that the value of investments will decrease as a result of a rise in interest rates. The Authority's investment policy minimizes interest rate risk by limiting investment maturities to two years as a means of managing its exposure to fair value losses arising from increasing interest rates. In addition, the policy limits weighted-average maturity of the overall portfolio to 18 months.

At year end, the Authority had the following investments:

| | | 2021 | | | 20 |)20 | | |
|-----------------------------------|----|--------------------|--------|------------|------------|-------------------------------|--|--------|
| | | Weigh average I | | | | Weighted- average Maturity | | |
| Investment | C | arrying Value | (Days) | (Days) Car | | carrying Val | | (Days) |
| | | | | | | | | |
| U.S. Treasury | \$ | 4,526,320 | 183 | \$ | 1,012,070 | 197 | | |
| U.S. government agency securities | | 5,010,865 | 410 | | 4,052,276 | 254 | | |
| TexSTAR investment pool | | 58,548,348 | 43 | | 38,605,005 | 39 | | |

Credit Risk

The Authority's investment policy minimizes credit risk by limiting allowable investments. In accordance with the Texas Public Funds Investment Act and the Authority's investment policy, the Authority invests in obligations of the United States or its agencies and instrumentalities. As of September 30, 2021, the credit quality ratings of debt securities (other than the U.S. government) are as follows:

| | 2021 | | | 2020 | | |
|---|----------------------------|-------------|------------------------|----------------------------|-------------|------------------------|
| Investment | Carrying Value | Rating | Rating Organization | Carrying Value | Rating | Rating Organization |
| U.S. government agency securities TexSTAR investment pool | \$ 5,010,865 58,548,348 | AA+ AAAm | S&P S&P | \$ 4,052,276 38,605,005 | AA+ AAAm | S&P S&P |
| Total | \$ 63,559,213 | | | \$ 42,657,281 | | |

Fair Value Measurements

The Authority categorizes its fair value measurements within the fair value hierarchy established by generally accepted accounting principles. The hierarchy is based on the valuation inputs used to measure the fair value of the asset. Level 1 inputs are quoted prices in active markets for identical assets, Level 2 inputs are significant other observable inputs, and Level 3 inputs are significant unobservable inputs.

Notes to Financial Statements

September 30, 2021 and 2020

Note 4 - Deposits and Investments (Continued)

In instances where inputs used to measure fair value fall into different levels in the above fair value hierarchy, fair value measurements in their entirety are categorized based on the lowest level input that is significant to the valuation. The Authority's assessment of the significance of particular inputs to these fair value measurements requires judgment and considers factors specific to each asset or liability.

The Authority has the following recurring fair value measurements as of September 30, 2021 and 2020:

- U.S. Treasury securities of \$4,526,320 and \$1,012,070, respectively, are valued using a matrix pricing model (Level 2 inputs).
- U.S. government agency securities of \$5,010,865 and \$4,052,276, respectively, are valued using a matrix pricing model (Level 2 inputs).
- The investment in the TexSTAR investment pool of \$58,548,348 and \$38,605,005, respectively, is measured at NAV.

The valuation method for investments measured at net asset value (NAV) per share (or its equivalent) is described below.

Investments in Entities that Calculate Net Asset Value per Share

The Authority holds shares or interests in an investment pool where the fair value of the investments is measured on a recurring basis using net asset value per share (or its equivalent) of the investment companies as a practical expedient.

At September 30, 2021 and 2020, the Authority had investments in the TexSTAR investment pool of \$58,548,348 and \$38,605,005, respectively.

TexSTAR is a local government investment pool created under the Interlocal Cooperation Act specifically tailored to meet Texas state and local government investment objectives of preservation of principal, daily liquidity, and competitive yield. The fund is rated AAAm by Standard & Poor's and maintains a weighted-average maturity of 60 days or less, with a maximum maturity of 13 months for any individual security. The fund seeks to maintain a constant dollar objective and fulfills all of the requirements of the Texas Public Funds Investment Act for local government investment pools.

TexSTAR is duly chartered by the State of Texas Interlocal Cooperation Act; administered by Hilltop Securities, Inc. and J.P. Morgan Investment Management, Inc. (JPMIM); and managed by JPMIM, which provides custody and investment management. The primary objectives of TexSTAR are, in order of priority, preservation and protection of principal, maintenance of sufficient liquidity to meet participants' needs, and yield. The portfolio will maintain a dollar-weighted average maturity that does not exceed 60 days and seeks to maintain a net asset value of \$1.00 per share. TexSTAR may invest in securities including: obligations of the United States or its agencies and instrumentalities, including the Federal Home Loan Banks; other obligations that are unconditionally guaranteed or insured by the U.S.; fully collateralized repurchase agreements with a defined termination date and unconditionally guaranteed or insured by the U.S. or its agencies and instrumentalities; and SEC-registered no-load money market funds that meet the requirements of the Public Funds Investment Act. The investment pool has a redemption notice period of one day and no maximum transaction amounts. The investment pools' authorities may only impose restrictions on redemptions in the event of a general suspension of trading on major securities market, general banking moratorium, or national or state emergency that affects the pools' liquidity.

Notes to Financial Statements

September 30, 2021 and 2020

Note 5 - Receivables

Receivables at September 30, 2021 and 2020 consisted of the following:

| | 2021 | _ | 2020 |
|--|---|----|-----------------------------------|
| Operating - Ticket, token, and other receivables Sales tax Grants receivable | \$ 774,105 6,225,167 3,848,952 | \$ | 755,056 5,422,458 3,887,420 |
| Total | \$ 10,848,224 | \$ | 10,064,934 |

Note 6 - Capital Assets

Capital asset activity during the fiscal year ended September 30, 2021 was as follows:

| | Balance October 1, 2020 | Reclassifications | Additions | Disposals and Adjustments | Balance September 30, 2021 |
|---|--|---|--|------------------------------------|--|
| Capital assets not being depreciated: Land Construction in progress | \$ 17,394,147 20,014,331 | \$ - (18,425,623) | \$ - 1,176,481 | \$ - - | \$ 17,394,147 2,765,189 |
| Subtotal | 37,408,478 | (18,425,623) | 1,176,481 | - | 20,159,336 |
| Capital assets being depreciated: Rail Land improvements Vehicles Furniture and equipment Facilities Easement | 283,178,861 12,166,783 12,584,752 7,035,417 31,760,649 16,997,155 | 17,369,093 (8,057) 1,064,587 - - - | - - - - - | - - (667,052) - - - | 300,547,954 12,158,726 12,982,287 7,035,417 31,760,649 16,997,155 |
| Subtotal | 363,723,617 | 18,425,623 | - | (667,052) | 381,482,188 |
| Accumulated depreciation: Rail Land improvements Vehicles Furniture and equipment Facilities Easement | 56,110,686 2,788,304 9,190,031 4,640,797 5,600,653 8,781,863 | - - - - - | 6,765,003 486,763 704,162 445,361 705,490 849,858 | - - (657,052) - - - | 62,875,689 3,275,067 9,237,141 5,086,158 6,306,143 9,631,721 |
| Subtotal | 87,112,334 | | 9,956,637 | (657,052) | 96,411,919 |
| Net capital assets being depreciated | 276,611,283 | 18,425,623 | (9,956,637) | (10,000) | 285,070,269 |
| Net capital assets | \$ 314,019,761 | <u>-</u> | \$ (8,780,156) | \$ (10,000) | \$ 305,229,605 |

Notes to Financial Statements

September 30, 2021 and 2020

Note 6 - Capital Assets (Continued)

Capital asset activity during the fiscal year ended September 30, 2020 was as follows:

| | 0 | Balance ctober 1, 2019 | Re | classifications | Additions | _ | Disposals and Adjustments | s | Balance eptember 30, 2020 |
|---|----|---|----|---------------------------------------|--|----|-------------------------------------|----|--|
| Capital assets not being depreciated: Land Construction in progress | \$ | 17,394,147 20,536,649 | \$ | - (4,586,481) | \$ 4,064,163 | \$ | - - | \$ | 17,394,147 20,014,331 |
| Subtotal | | 37,930,796 | | (4,586,481) | 4,064,163 | | - | | 37,408,478 |
| Capital assets being depreciated: Rail Land improvements Vehicles Furniture and equipment Facilities Easement | | 283,178,861 9,017,865 12,698,163 5,567,482 31,760,649 16,997,155 | | 3,148,918 - 1,437,563 - - | - - 35,700 - - | | - (113,411) (5,328) - - | | 283,178,861 12,166,783 12,584,752 7,035,417 31,760,649 16,997,155 |
| Subtotal | | 359,220,175 | | 4,586,481 | 35,700 | | (118,739) | | 363,723,617 |
| Accumulated depreciation: Rail Land improvements Vehicles Furniture and equipment Facilities Easement | | 49,779,910 2,327,927 8,513,300 4,148,347 4,895,163 7,932,006 | | - - - - - | 6,330,776 460,377 714,535 497,779 705,490 849,857 | | - (37,804) (5,329) - - | | 56,110,686 2,788,304 9,190,031 4,640,797 5,600,653 8,781,863 |
| Subtotal | | 77,596,653 | | | 9,558,814 | | (43,133) | | 87,112,334 |
| Net capital assets being depreciated | _ | 281,623,522 | | 4,586,481 | (9,523,114) | | (75,606) | | 276,611,283 |
| Net capital assets | \$ | 319,554,318 | \$ | - | \$ (5,458,951) | \$ | (75,606) | \$ | 314,019,761 |

In June 2010, the Authority acquired a rail operating easement for the purpose of constructing, installing, maintaining, and operating a modern passenger rail system for payments totaling \$16,950,000. As of September 30, 2021, \$16,150,000 had been paid to the Dallas Area Rapid Transit. The remaining payments of \$800,000 will be paid in annual payments until the contract expires (see Note 11). The Authority's right under the contract will expire in June 2030, which is 20-years after the execution of the contract. Amortization of this asset is being recognized over the 20-year useful life on a straight-line basis and was \$849,858 and \$849,857 for the years ended September 30, 2021 and 2020, respectively.

September 30, 2021 and 2020

Note 7 - Long-term Debt

Long-term debt activity for the years ended September 30, 2021 and 2020 can be summarized as follows:

| | | | | | 2021 | | | | | |
|--|-------------------------|---|----------------------|----|------------|----|--------------|----------------|----|-----------------------|
| | Interest Rate Ranges | Principal Maturity Ranges | Beginning Balance | _ | Additions | _ | Reductions | Ending Balance | Du | ie within One Year |
| Bonds and contracts payable - Other debt: | | | | | | | | | | |
| Sales Tax Revenue Refunding Bonds, Series 2020 Sales Tax Revenue | 0.99% | \$805,000 - 2,065,000 | \$ - | \$ | 12,930,000 | \$ | (1,605,000) | \$ 11,325,000 | \$ | 1,600,000 |
| Refunding Bonds, Series 2021 Sales Tax Revenue | 1.28% | \$865,000 - 1,140,000 | - | | 9,940,000 | | - | 9,940,000 | | 865,000 |
| Refunding Bonds, Series 2009 | 3.99% | \$885,000 - 1,650,000 \$555.000 - | 12,755,000 | | - | | (12,755,000) | - | | - |
| Sales Tax Bonds, Series 2011 | 3.13% | 1,215,000 | 10,605,000 | | - | | (10,605,000) | | | - |
| Total long-term debt | | | \$ 23,360,000 | \$ | 22,870,000 | \$ | (24,965,000) | \$ 21,265,000 | \$ | 2,465,000 |
| | | | | | 2020 | | | | | |
| | Interest Rate Ranges | Principal Maturity Ranges | Beginning Balance | | Additions | | Reductions | Ending Balance | Du | ie within One Year |
| Bonds and contracts payable - Other debt: Sales Tax Revenue Refunding Bonds, Series | | \$885.000 - | | | | | | | | |
| 2009 | 3.99% | 1,650,000 - \$555,000 - | \$ 13,915,000 | \$ | - | \$ | (1,160,000) | \$ 12,755,000 | \$ | 1,205,000 |
| Sales Tax Bonds, Series 2011 | 3.13% | 1,215,000 | 11,315,000 | | - | | (710,000) | 10,605,000 | | 750,000 |
| Total long-term debt | | | \$ 25,230,000 | \$ | | \$ | (1,870,000) | \$ 23,360,000 | \$ | 1,955,000 |

Revenue Bonds

Revenue bonds involve a pledge of specific income derived from the acquired or constructed assets and to pay debt service. The Authority utilizes revenue bonds to finance capital expenditures. The Authority has pledged gross sales tax revenue. Proceeds from the bonds provided financing for acquisition of rail vehicles and the first phase of the new federal mandate for Positive Train Control. The remaining principal and interest to be paid on the bonds is \$22,681,449. During the current year, gross sales tax revenue of the Authority was \$35,332,154, compared to annual debt requirements of \$1,710,250.

Debt Service Requirements to Maturity

Annual debt service requirements to maturity for the above bonds and note obligations are as follows:

| | | Othe | | | | |
|---|----|---|----|--|----|---|
| Years Ending September 30 | _ | Principal | _ | Interest | _ | Total |
| 2022 2023 2024 2025 2026 2027-2031 2032 | \$ | 2,465,000 1,775,000 1,800,000 1,815,000 1,835,000 9,510,000 2,065,000 | \$ | 234,048 212,438 192,299 171,811 151,102 434,310 20,441 | \$ | 2,699,048 1,987,438 1,992,299 1,986,811 1,986,102 9,944,310 2,085,441 |
| Total | \$ | 21,265,000 | \$ | 1,416,449 | \$ | 22,681,449 |

Notes to Financial Statements

September 30, 2021 and 2020

Note 7 - Long-term Debt (Continued)

Advance Bond Refundings

During the year, the Authority issued \$12,930,000 in revenue bonds with an average interest rate of 0.99 percent. The proceeds of these bonds were used to advance refund \$12,755,000 of outstanding revenue bonds with an average interest rate of 3.99 percent. The net proceeds of \$12,845,475 (after payment of \$84,525 in underwriting fees, insurance, and other issuance costs) were used to purchase U.S. government securities. Those securities were deposited in an irrevocable trust with an escrow agent to provide for all future debt service payments on the original bonds. As a result, the bonds are considered to be defeased, and the liability for the bonds has been removed from long-term debt. The advance refunding reduced total debt service payments over the next 8 years by \$1,707,058, which represents an economic gain of \$1,803,985.

During the year, the Authority issued \$9,940,000 revenue bonds with an average interest rate of 1.28 percent. The proceeds of these bonds were used to advance refund \$9,855,000 of outstanding revenue bonds with an average interest rate of 3.13 percent. The net proceeds of \$9,867,853 (after payment of \$72,147 in underwriting fees, insurance, and other issuance costs) were used to purchase U.S. government securities. Those securities were deposited in an irrevocable trust with an escrow agent to provide for all future debt service payments on the original bonds. As a result, the bonds are considered to be defeased, and the liability for the bonds has been removed from long-term debt. The advance refunding reduced total debt service payments over the next 10 years by \$1,008,898, which represents an economic gain of \$938,899.

Significant Terms

The bond agreements require the Authority to establish and maintain a pledged revenue account and a bond fund account at a depository institution and segregate these accounts in the general ledger for the purpose of accumulating principal and interest when it becomes due and payable. At September 30, 2021 and 2020, the Authority was in compliance with this requirement.

Note 8 - Risk Management

The Authority is exposed to various risks of loss related to property loss, torts, errors and omissions, and employee injuries (workers' compensation), as well as medical benefits provided to employees. The Authority participates in the Texas Municipal League Intergovernmental Risk Pool (TML-IRP) to provide insurance for errors and omission, general liability, workers' compensation, automobile liability, and physical damage coverage. Settled claims relating to the insurance have not exceeded the amount of insurance coverage in any of the past three fiscal years.

The shared-risk pool program in which the Authority participates operates as a common risk-sharing management program; member premiums are used to purchase commercial excess insurance coverage and to pay member claims in excess of deductible amounts.

Premiums are assessed based on the rates set by the Texas State Board of Insurance for each participating political subdivision's experience. The Authority has a \$10,000 deductible for errors and omissions liability with limits of \$3,000,000 per wrongful act and an annual aggregate of \$6,000,000. General liability coverage has no deductible with limits of \$1,000,000 per occurrence, \$1,000,000 per occurrence for sudden events involving pollution, and an annual aggregate of \$2,000,000. Workers' compensation coverage has no deductible. Automobile liability has a limit of \$5,000,000 per occurrence. The Authority's vehicles are insured for physical damage for collision and comprehensive coverage after a \$10,000 deductible. Real and personal property coverage has a \$10,000 deductible. Cyber liability and data breach response coverage is also provided by TML-IRP for the following:

Notes to Financial Statements

September 30, 2021 and 2020

Note 8 - Risk Management (Continued)

- Information security, privacy liability, website media content liability \$1,000,000 aggregate limit, \$0 deductible
- Privacy breach response services \$25,000 per incident and in the aggregate, \$1,250 deductible per incident
- Regulatory defense and penalties/payment card industry fines and expenses/cyber extortion/first party data protection and network business interruption \$50,000 aggregate limit; \$2,500 deductible per claim, \$5,000 loss of income deductible

The Authority has a government crime policy with TML-IRP insuring against forgery and computer fraud up to \$1,000,000 in the aggregate. For the years ended September 30, 2021 and 2020, the Authority has not incurred any losses under this plan.

In addition to the coverages provided by TML-IRP, the Authority also carries pollution liability coverage for its 16,000-gallon underground fuel storage tank (UST) permitted by the Texas Commission on Environmental Quality (TCEQ) and located at the Rail Operations & Maintenance Facility. The UST provides fleet refueling for the Authority's passenger rail vehicles. Mid-Continent Casualty Company is the insurance provider with the following coverages: \$1,000,000 each pollution incident for bodily injury, property damage, and claim handling, \$2,000,000 annual aggregate, \$5,000 deductible.

Beginning in December 2020, DCTA's excess railroad liability insurance has been provided under Dallas Area Rapid Transit's policy with a policy limit of \$140 million and \$3 million self-insured retention. DCTA secured its own rail liability insurance coverage from October 2016 to December 2020. The change to a joint policy allowed both DCTA and DART to benefit from reduced premiums.

Note 9 - Pension Plans

Plan Description

The Authority provides retirement, disability and death benefits for all of its full-time employees through a non-traditional defined benefit pension plan in the Texas County and District Retirement System, an agent multiple-employer plan, administered by the TCDRS board. The board of directors is responsible for the administration of the statewide agent multi-employer public employee defined benefit pension retirement system consisting of nearly 800 public employee defined benefit pension plans.

TCDRS in the aggregate issues an Annual Comprehensive Financial Report (ACFR) on a calendar year basis. The ACFR is available upon written request from the board of trustees at P.O. Box 2034, Austin, TX 78768-2034 or can be viewed at www.tcdrs.org.

Benefits Provided

Texas County and District Retirement System provides retirement, disability, and survivor benefits to all of its non-temporary DCTA employees. Retirement benefits are calculated based on 5 percent of each employee's pay, earning 7 percent interest on beginning of year balances annually and at retirement, account is matched at an employer set percentage (currently 200 percent) and is then converted to an annuity. An employee who leaves DCTA service may withdraw his or her contributions, plus any accumulated interest.

Benefit terms do not provide for an automatic annual cost of living adjustments to each employee's retirement allowance subsequent to the employee's retirement date. However, each year, the Authority may elect an ad hoc COLA for its retirees. There are two COLA types, each limited by actual inflation.

Benefit terms are generally established under the TCDRS Act and can be amended as of January 1 each year but must remain in conformity with the Act.

Notes to Financial Statements

September 30, 2021 and 2020

December 21

Note 9 - Pension Plans (Continued)

Benefit terms, including contribution requirements, for qualified deferred compensation defined contribution plan under the Internal Revenue Code Section 457 are established and may be amended by the board of directors. The Authority is not required to contribute to individual employee accounts. Employees are permitted to make contributions to the pension plan up to applicable Internal Revenue Code limits. Employees are immediately vested in their own contributions and earnings on those contributions and become vested in employer contributions and earnings on employer contributions after completion of 60 months of creditable service with the Authority. Nonvested Authority contributions are forfeited upon termination of employment. Such forfeitures are used to cover a portion of the plan's administrative expenses.

Employees Covered by Benefit Terms

The following members were covered by the benefit terms:

| Date of member count | 2020 |
|--|---------------|
| Inactive plan members or beneficiaries currently receiving benefits Inactive plan members entitled to but not yet receiving benefits Active plan members | 2 34 32 |
| Total employees covered by the plan | 68 |

Contributions

The deposit rate for employees is 4 percent to 7 percent of compensation, as adopted by the employer's governing body. Participating employers are required to contribute at actuarially determined rates to ensure adequate funding for each employer's plan. Employer contribution rates are determined annually and approved by the TCDRS board of trustees. Pursuant to state law, employers participating in the system must pay 100 percent of their actuarially determined required contributions on an annual basis. Each employer has the opportunity to make additional contributions in excess of its annual required contribution rate either by adopting an elected rate that is higher than the required rate or by making additional contributions on an ad hoc basis. Employers may make additional contributions to pay down their liabilities faster, prefund benefit enhancements, and/or buffer against future adverse experience. In addition, employers annually review their plans and may adjust benefits and costs based on their local needs and budgets. Although accrued benefits may not be reduced, employers may reduce future benefit accruals and immediately reduce costs. Monthly contributions by the Authority are based on the covered payroll and the employer contribution rate in effect. For fiscal years 2021 and 2020, the Authority made contributions of 6.25 percent and 6.26 percent, respectively.

Net Pension Liability

The Authority has chosen to use the December 31, 2020 measurement date as its measurement date for the net pension liability. The September 30, 2021 fiscal year end reported net pension liability was determined using a measure of the total pension liability and the pension net position as of the December 31, 2020 measurement date. The December 31, 2020 measurement date total pension liability was determined by an actuarial valuation performed as of that date.

September 30, 2021 and 2020

Note 9 - Pension Plans (Continued)

Changes in the net pension liability during the measurement year were as follows:

| | Increase (Decrease) | | | | | | | |
|---|---------------------|--------------|----|-----------|-------------------|------------|--|--|
| O N. (D | T | otal Pension | | Plan Net | | et Pension | | |
| Changes in Net Pension Liability | | Liability | | Position | (Asset) Liability | | | |
| Balance at December 31, 2019 | \$ | 2,375,960 | \$ | 2,401,949 | \$ | (25,989) | | |
| Changes for the year: | | | | | | | | |
| Service cost | | 354,281 | | - | | 354,281 | | |
| Interest | | 220,389 | | - | | 220,389 | | |
| Differences between expected and actual | | | | | | | | |
| experience | | (84,719) | | - | | (84,719) | | |
| Changes in assumptions | | 221,352 | | - | | 221,352 | | |
| Contributions - Employer | | - | | 202,396 | | (202,396) | | |
| Contributions - Employee | | - | | 160,377 | | (160,377) | | |
| Net investment income | | - | | 248,840 | | (248,840) | | |
| Benefit payments, including refunds | | (19,149) | | (19,149) | | - | | |
| Administrative expenses | | - | | (2,197) | | 2,197 | | |
| Miscellaneous other charges | | - | | 10,406 | | (10,406) | | |
| Net changes | | 692,154 | | 600,673 | | 91,481 | | |
| Balance at December 31, 2020 | \$ | 3,068,114 | \$ | 3,002,622 | \$ | 65,492 | | |

The plan's fiduciary net position represents 97.9 percent of the total pension liability.

Changes in the net pension liability during the prior measurement year were as follows:

| | | I | ncre | ease (Decrease) | | | | |
|-------------------------------------|----|--------------|------|-----------------|-------------------|-------------|--|--|
| | T | otal Pension | | Plan Net | | Net Pension | | |
| Changes in Net Pension Liability | | Liability | _ | Position | Liability (Asset) | | | |
| Balance at December 31, 2018 | \$ | 1,861,885 | \$ | 1,752,600 | \$ | 109,285 | | |
| Changes for the year: | | | | | | | | |
| Service cost | | 296,238 | | - | | 296,238 | | |
| Interest | | 174,468 | | - | | 174,468 | | |
| Changes in benefits | | 51,919 | | _ | | 51,919 | | |
| Contributions - Employer | | - | | 200,030 | | (200,030) | | |
| Contributions - Employee | | - | | 159,880 | | (159,880) | | |
| Net investment income | | - | | 287,455 | | (287,455) | | |
| Benefit payments, including refunds | | (8,550) | | (8,550) | | - | | |
| Administrative expenses | | - | | (1,830) | | 1,830 | | |
| Other | | - | | 12,364 | _ | (12,364) | | |
| Net changes | | 514,075 | | 649,349 | _ | (135,274) | | |
| Balance at December 31, 2019 | \$ | 2,375,960 | \$ | 2,401,949 | \$ | (25,989) | | |

The plan's fiduciary net position represents 101.1 percent of the total pension liability as of the previous measurement date.

Pension Expense and Deferred Outflows of Resources and Deferred Inflows of Resources Related to Pensions

For the year ended September 30, 2021 and 2020, the Authority recognized pension expense of \$231,840 and \$172,966, respectively.

September 30, 2021 and 2020

Note 9 - Pension Plans (Continued)

At September 30, 2021, the Authority reported deferred outflows of resources and deferred inflows of resources related to pensions from the following sources:

| | | 20 |)21 | | | 2020 | | | | |
|--|----|-------------|-----|------------|----|-------------|----|------------|--|--|
| | | Deferred | | Deferred | | Deferred | | Deferred | | |
| | | Outflows of | | Inflows of | | Outflows of | | Inflows of | | |
| | _ | Resources | _ | Resources | _ | Resources | _ | Resources | | |
| Difference between expected and actual experience | \$ | 97,086 | \$ | 91,617 | \$ | 127,473 | \$ | 35,762 | | |
| Changes in assumptions Net difference between projected and actual earnings on pension | | 182,878 | | - | | 8,061 | | - | | |
| plan investments Employer contributions to the plan subsequent to the measurement | | - | | 60,873 | | - | | 34,334 | | |
| date | | 141,166 | | - | | 154,913 | _ | | | |
| Total | \$ | 421,130 | \$ | 152,490 | \$ | 290,447 | \$ | 70,096 | | |

Amounts reported as deferred outflows of resources and deferred inflows of resources related to pensions will be recognized in pension expense as follows (note that employer contributions subsequent to the measurement date will reduce the net pension liability and, therefore, will not be included in future pension expense):

| Year Ending December 31 | Amount |
|----------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 2021 2022 2023 | \$ 32,659 33,660 12,466 |
| 2024 | 38,688 |
| 2025 | 10,001 |
| Total | \$ 127,474 |

Actuarial Assumptions

The total pension liability in the December 31, 2020 actuarial valuation was determined using an inflation assumption of 2.50 percent; assumed salary increases (average over career including inflation) of 3.50 to 8.00 percent, including wage inflation of 3.00 percent; an investment rate of return (gross of investment expenses) of 7.60 percent; and the RP-2014 Healthy Annuitant mortality tables. These assumptions were applied to all periods included in the measurement and are based on an experience study conducted for the period from January 1, 2013 through December 31, 2016.

Discount Rate

The discount rate used to measure the total pension liability was 7.60 percent. The projection of cash flows used to determine the discount rate assumed that employee contributions will be made at the current contribution rate and that Authority contributions will be made at rates equal to the difference between actuarially determined contribution rates and the employee rate.

Based on those assumptions, the pension plan's fiduciary net position was projected to be available to make all projected future benefit payments of current active and inactive employees. Therefore, the long-term expected rate of return on pension plan investments was applied to all periods of projected benefit payments to determine the total pension liability.

September 30, 2021 and 2020

Geometric Real

Note 9 - Pension Plans (Continued)

Investment Rate of Return

The long-term expected rate of return on TCDRS assets is determined by adding expected inflation to expected long-term real returns and reflecting expected volatility and correlation. The capital market assumptions and information shown below are provided by TCDRS' investment consultant, Cliffwater LLC. The numbers shown are based on January 2021 information for a 10-year time horizon.

| Asset Class | Target Allocation | Rate of Return (Expected Minus Inflation) |
|--|-------------------|---|
| LLC aquition | 11.50 % | 4.25 % |
| U.S. equities | | _ |
| Global equities | 2.50 | 4.55 |
| International equities - Developed markets | 5.00 | 4.25 |
| International equities - Emerging markets | 6.00 | 4.75 |
| Investment-grade bonds | 3.00 | (0.85) |
| Strategic credit | 9.00 | `2.11 [′] |
| Direct lending | 16.00 | 6.70 |
| Distressed debt | 4.00 | 5.70 |
| REIT equities | 2.00 | 3.45 |
| Master limited partnerships | 2.00 | 5.10 |
| Private real estate partnerships | 6.00 | 4.90 |
| Private equity | 25.00 | 7.25 |
| Hedge funds | 6.00 | 1.85 |
| Cash equivalents | 2.00 | (0.70) |
| | | |

Sensitivity of the Net Pension Liability to Changes in the Discount Rate

The following presents the net pension liability of the Authority, calculated using the discount rate of 7.60 percent, as well as what the Authority's net pension liability (asset) would be if it were calculated using a discount rate that is 1 percentage point lower or 1 percentage point higher than the current rate:

| | 1 Percentage C Point Decrease (6.60%) | | Rate (7.60%) | | 1 Percentage Point Increase (8.60%) |
|-------------------------------|---|----|--------------|----|---|
| Net pension liability (asset) | \$ 590,345 | \$ | 65,492 | \$ | (361,098) |

Assumption Changes

The December 31, 2020 actuarial valuation updated investment rate of return, net of investment and administrative expenses, from 8.00 to 7.50 percent; inflation from 2.75 to 2.50 percent; and discount rate from 8.10 to 7.60 percent

Note 10 - NTMC Defined Contribution Retirement Plans

The Authority sponsors one NTMC 401(k) plan for non-operator employees. The plan provides for the Authority to make a required matching contribution of 50 percent of the participant's elected deferral up to 6 percent. Contributions to the plan totaled \$9,138 and \$9,263 for the years ended September 30, 2021 and 2020, respectively.

The Authority sponsors one Amalgamated Transit Union (ATU) 401(k) plan for operator employees. The plan provides for the Authority to make a required matching contribution of 50 percent of the participant's elected deferral up to 3 percent. Contributions to the plan totaled \$460 for the year ended September 30, 2021. In 2020, the Authority did not match the ATU 401(k) plan. In April 2021, NTMC and the ATU went into bargaining negotiations and bargained a new collective bargaining agreement (CBA) for an employer match to this plan.

Notes to Financial Statements

September 30, 2021 and 2020

Note 11 - Easement Obligation

In June 2010, the Authority entered into a rail operating easement agreement with DART. The easement obligation represents the remaining principal amounts payable under the agreement. Remaining requirements are as follows:

| Years Ending | _ | Amount |
|---|----|---|
| 2022 2023 2024 2025 2026 2027-2029 | \$ | 100,000 100,000 100,000 100,000 100,000 |
| 2027-2029 | | 300,000 |
| Total | \$ | 800,000 |

The current portion of the easement obligation is \$100,000 as of September 30, 2021 and 2020.

Notes to Financial Statements

September 30, 2021 and 2020

Note 12 - Component Unit Information

Condensed financial information detailing component unit activity is as follows:

| | | 2021 | | | 2020 |
|---|--|---------------------|---|--|---|
| | DCTA | NTMC | Total | DCTA | NTMC Total |
| Current Assets Long-term Assets Deferred Outflows of Resources | \$ 80,343,240 \$ 305,927,328 421,130 | 499,838 | \$ 80,843,078 305,927,328 421,130 | \$ 53,858,895 \$ 314,895,537 290,447 | 408,253 \$ 54,267,148 - 314,895,537 - 290,447 |
| Total assets and deferred outflows | \$ 386,691,698 \$ | 499,838 | \$ 387,191,536 | \$ 369,044,879 \$ | 408,253 \$ 369,453,132 |
| Current Liabilities Long-term Liabilities Deferred Inflows of Resources | 5,330,173 19,565,492 152,490 | 499,838 - - | 5,830,011 19,565,492 152,490 | 5,486,639 22,205,000 70,096 | 408,253 5,894,892 - 22,205,000 - 70,096 |
| Total liabilities and deferred inflows | 25,048,155 | 499,838 | 25,547,993 | 27,761,735 | 408,253 28,169,988 |
| Net Position Net investment in capital assets Unrestricted | 283,862,328 77,781,215 | - | 283,862,328 77,781,215 | 289,978,581 51,304,563 | - 289,978,581 - 51,304,563 |
| Total net position | 361,643,543 | - | 361,643,543 | 341,283,144 | - 341,283,144 |
| Total liabilities and net position | \$ 386,691,698 \$ | 499,838 | \$ 387,191,536 | \$ 369,044,879 \$ | 408,253 \$ 369,453,132 |
| Operating Revenues | \$ 3,931,563 \$ | - | \$ 3,931,563 | \$ 4,639,923 \$ | - \$ 4,639,923 |
| Operating Expenses | 32,802,554 | 6,520,464 | 39,323,018 | 33,139,568 | 7,555,427 40,694,995 |
| Operating Loss | (28,870,991) | (6,520,464) | (35,391,455) | (28,499,645) | (7,555,427) (36,055,072) |
| Other Revenue (Expense) Nonoperating revenue Capital contributions Payment from DCTA to NTMC | 54,342,431 1,409,423 (6,520,464) | - - 6,520,464 | 54,342,431 1,409,423 | 46,064,745 3,472,676 (7,555,427) | - 46,064,745 - 3,472,676 7,555,427 - |
| Total other revenue | 49,231,390 | 6,520,464 | 55,751,854 | 41,981,994 | 7,555,427 49,537,421 |
| Change in net position | \$ 20,360,399 \$ | - | \$ 20,360,399 | \$ 13,482,349 \$ | - \$ 13,482,349 |
| Cash Flows from Operating Activities | \$ (26,864,831) \$ | 5,529 | \$ (26,859,302) | \$ (25,883,237) \$ | 43,941 \$ (25,839,296) |
| Cash Flows from Noncapital Financing Activities | 54,223,364 | - | 54,223,364 | 43,472,246 | - 43,472,246 |
| Cash Flows from Capital and Related Financing Activities | (2,706,900) | - | (2,706,900) | (3,414,303) | - (3,414,303) |
| Cash Flows from Investing Activities | (4,441,661) | - | (4,441,661) | 267,048 | - 267,048 |
| Net Increase in Cash and Cash Equivalents | 20,209,972 | 5,529 | 20,215,501 | 14,441,754 | 43,941 14,485,695 |
| Cash and Cash Equivalents - Beginning of year | 39,356,019 | 407,390 | 39,763,409 | 24,914,265 | 363,449 25,277,714 |
| Cash and Cash Equivalents - End of year | \$ 59,565,991 \$ | 412,919 | \$ 59,978,910 | \$ 39,356,019 \$ | 407,390 \$ 39,763,409 |

Notes to Financial Statements

2021

2020

September 30, 2021 and 2020

Note 13 - Commitments and Contingencies

Operating Lease Agreements

The Authority has entered into certain operating lease agreements. All operating leases to which the Authority is currently a party will expire in fiscal year 2022. The total lease expense was \$224,889 for 2021 and \$226,632 for 2020. The remaining lease payments for 2022 are \$119,639.

State and Federal Grants

The Authority participates in several state and federal grant programs, which are governed by various rules and regulations of the grantor agencies. Costs charged to these grant programs are subject to audit, approval, and adjustment by the grantor agencies, which could result in refunds to the grantor. It is management's opinion that the Authority has complied with substantially all of the requirements under the respective grants, and, therefore, no provision has been recorded in the accompanying financial statements for such liabilities.

TRiP Projects

The Transportation Reinvestment Program (TRiP) will enable partnerships between DCTA and its member cities on mutually beneficial investments in transit-supportive projects by allowing DCTA to distribute funds to member cities for eligible projects consistent with DCTA's Long Range Service Plan and the Authority's enabling legislation, Chapters 431 and 460 of the Texas Transportation Code. TRiP was approved by the board as a five-year program with its first funding cycle in fiscal year 2021. The anticipated annual TRiP budget will be set at 15 percent of DCTA's net available fund balance from the previous fiscal year. For the initial program year and in addition to the set 15 percent, a one-time program startup amount of \$2,000,000 was dedicated to the TRiP project line item within the fiscal year 2021 budget. The Authority has made commitments totaling \$4,972,771 to local communities to support transit-related projects under the Authority's Transportation Reinvestment Program.

Note 14 - Operating Reserves

The board adopted a policy to designate three months' operating expenses as a reserve to address unanticipated emergencies, a sales tax stabilization fund, fuel stabilization, and a capital/infrastructure reserve. These reserves may be allocated by the approval of the board. At September 30, 2021 and 2020, the reserves are as follows:

| Operating reserve Sales tax stabilization Fuel stabilization Capital/Infrastructure | \$ | 8,563,132 934,625 326,000 2,000,000 | \$ 8,069,817 804,161 450,000 4,000,000 |
|---|-----------|--|--|
| Total | <u>\$</u> | 11,823,757 | \$ 13,323,978 |
| | | | |

Required Supplemental Information

Required Supplemental Information Schedule of Changes in the Net Pension Liability and Related Ratios

Last Seven Plan Years Ended December 31

| | 2020 | 2019 | | 2018 | 2017 | _ | 2016 | 2015 | | 2014 |
|--|--|---|----|---|--|----|---|---|--|---|
| Total Pension Liability Service cost Interest Changes in benefit terms | \$ 354,281 \$ 220,389 - | 296,238 174,468 - | \$ | 268,708 138,144 - | \$ 232,727 102,436 - | \$ | 202,663 70,330 - | \$ 159,650 \$ 60,290 (26,820) | | 130,849 37,882 40,628 |
| Differences between expected and actual experience Changes in assumptions Benefit payments, including refunds | (84,719) 221,352 (19,149) | 51,919 - (8,550) | | 20,678 - (4,744) | 68,812 5,065 (3,633) | | 6,193 - (28,266) | (95,366) 13,055 (1,640) | | 87,214 - (12,905) |
| Net Change in Total Pension Liability | 692,154 | 514,075 | | 422,786 | 405,407 | | 250,920 | 109,169 | | 283,668 |
| Total Pension Liability - Beginning of year | 2,375,960 | 1,861,885 | | 1,439,099 | 1,033,692 | | 782,772 | 673,603 | | 389,935 |
| Total Pension Liability - End of year | \$ 3,068,114 \$ | 2,375,960 | \$ | 1,861,885 | \$ 1,439,099 | \$ | 1,033,692 | \$ 782,772 \$ | <u>. </u> | 673,603 |
| Plan Fiduciary Net Position Contributions - Employer Contributions - Employee Net investment income (loss) Administrative expenses Benefit payments, including refunds Other | \$ 202,396 \$ 160,377 248,840 (2,197) (19,149) 10,406 | 200,030 159,880 287,455 (1,830) (8,550) 12,364 | · | 184,229 149,818 (23,109) (1,408) (4,744) 9,955 | \$ 148,998 122,330 152,471 (956) (3,633) 3,579 | \$ | 126,805 104,798 55,555 (604) (28,266) 22,435 | \$ 108,954 \$ 92,022 (13,315) (472) (1,640) (57) | | 72,565 78,874 25,740 (366) (12,905) (27) |
| Net Change in Plan Fiduciary Net Position | 600,673 | 649,349 | | 314,741 | 422,789 | | 280,723 | 185,492 | | 163,881 |
| Plan Fiduciary Net Position - Beginning of year | 2,401,949 | 1,752,600 | | 1,437,859 | 1,015,070 | | 734,347 | 548,855 | | 384,974 |
| Plan Fiduciary Net Position - End of year | \$ 3,002,622 \$ | 2,401,949 | \$ | 1,752,600 | \$ 1,437,859 | \$ | 1,015,070 | \$ 734,347 \$ | j | 548,855 |
| Authority's Net Pension Liability - Ending | \$ 65,492 \$ | (25,989) | \$ | 109,285 | \$ 1,240 | \$ | 18,622 | \$ 48,425 \$ | <u> </u> | 124,748 |
| Plan Fiduciary Net Position as a Percentage of Total Pension Liability | 97.87 % | 101.09 % | | 94.13 % | 99.91 % | | 98.20 % | 93.81 % | | 81.48 % |
| Covered Payroll | \$ 3,207,550 \$ | 3,197,604 | \$ | 2,996,341 | \$ 2,446,606 | \$ | 2,095,950 | \$ 1,840,437 \$ | ï | 1,577,470 |
| Authority's Net Pension Liability as a Percentage of Covered Payroll | 2.04 % | (0.81)% | | 3.65 % | 0.05 % | | 0.89 % | 2.63 % | | 7.91 % |

Schedule is built prospectively upon implementation of GASB 68.

Required Supplemental Information Schedule of Pension Contributions

Last Seven Fiscal Years Years Ended September 30

| | _ | 2021 | 2020 | 2019 | 2018 | 2017 | 2016 | 2015 |
|--|----|-----------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| Actuarially determined contribution Contributions in relation to the | \$ | 188,649 | \$ 206,622 | \$ 188,483 | \$ 184,273 | \$ 143,780 | \$ 120,475 | \$ 99,864 |
| actuarially determined contribution | | 188,649 | 206,622 | 188,483 | 184,273 | 143,780 | 120,475 | 99,864 |
| Contribution Excess (Deficiency) | \$ | | \$ - | \$ | \$ - | \$ | \$ | \$ |
| Covered Payroll | \$ | 3,018,354 | \$ 3,300,495 | \$ 3,025,716 | \$ 3,002,632 | \$ 2,364,645 | \$ 2,001,375 | \$ 1,776,972 |
| Contributions as a Percentage of Covered Payroll | | 6.25 % | 6.26 % | 6.23 % | 6.14 % | 6.08 % | 6.02 % | 5.62 % |

Notes to Schedule of Pension Contributions

Valuation date

Actuarial valuation information relative to the determination of contributions:

, localitat faradien internacion foració de uno determinación el contribución.

Actuarially determined contribution rates are calculated as of December 31, two years prior to the end of the fiscal year

in which the contributions are reported.

Methods and assumptions used to determine contribution rates:

Actuarial cost method Entry age

Amortization method Level percentage of payroll, closed

Remaining amortization period 20 years

Asset valuation method 5-year smoothed market

Inflation 2.50 percent

Salary increase Varies by age and service 4.6 percent average over career including inflation

1.50 percent - Net of administrative and investment expenses, including inflation

Retirement age Members who are eligible for service retirement are assumed to commence receiving benefit payments based on age.

The average age at service retirement for recent retirees is 61.

Mortality 130 percent of the RP-2014 Healthy Annuitant Mortality Table for males and 110 percent of the RP-2014 Healthy

Annuitant Mortality for females, both projected with 110 percent of the MP-2014 Ultimate scale after 2014.

Other information None

Note to Required Supplemental Information

September 30, 2021 and 2020

Pension Information

Changes in Assumptions

Amounts reported in 2021 reflect updated investment rate of return, net of investment and administrative expenses, from 8.00 percent to 7.50 percent; inflation from 2.75 percent to 2.50 percent; and discount rate from 8.10 percent to 7.60 percent.

Other Supplemental Information

Other Supplemental Information Schedule of Revenue and Expenses - DCTA - Budget to Actual

Year Ended September 30, 2021 (with Comparative Actual for 2020)

| | Original Budget (Unaudited) | Final Budget (Unaudited) | Actual | Variance with Final Budget | 2020 |
|--|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------|----------------|----------------------------|----------------|
| Operating Revenues | | | | | |
| Passenger revenue | \$ 580,291 | \$ 580,291 | \$ 548,078 | \$ (32,213) | \$ 833,637 |
| Contract services | 3,458,402 | 3,633,760 | 2,923,277 | (710,483) | 3,378,826 |
| Other | <u> </u> | 200,000 | 460,208 | 260,208 | 427,460 |
| Total operating revenues | 4,038,693 | 4,414,051 | 3,931,563 | (482,488) | 4,639,923 |
| Operating Expenses | | | | | |
| Salaries, wages, and benefits | 4,193,211 | 4,263,661 | 3,945,499 | 318,162 | 4,398,509 |
| Outsourced services and charges | 3,955,959 | 6,247,868 | 5,028,644 | 1,219,224 | 4,683,164 |
| Materials and supplies | 2,917,735 | 2,883,995 | 1,086,848 | 1,797,147 | 1,922,266 |
| Purchased transportation services | 10,732,539 | 11,402,257 | 10,302,946 | 1,099,311 | 10,091,453 |
| Utilities | 506,668 | 508,810 | 431,998 | 76,812 | 431,838 |
| Insurance | 1,681,336 | 1,715,712 | 1,712,923 | 2,789 | 1,656,122 |
| Leases and rentals | 238,468 | 238,468 | 224,889 | 13,579 | 226,632 |
| Employee development | 241,304 | 241,604 | 82,372 | 159,232 | 170,770 |
| Transportation reinvestment program | - | 29,798 | 29,798 | - | - |
| Depreciation | 10,489,375 | 10,489,375 | 9,956,637 | 532,738 | 9,558,814 |
| Total operating expenses | 34,956,595 | 38,021,548 | 32,802,554 | 5,218,994 | 33,139,568 |
| Operating Loss | (30,917,902) | (33,607,497) | (28,870,991) | 4,736,506 | (28,499,645) |
| Nonoperating Revenue (Expenses) | | | | | |
| Investment income | 100,000 | 100,000 | 31,178 | (68,822) | 320,793 |
| Gain (loss) on sale of assets | - | - | 42,344 | 42,344 | (7,482) |
| Sales tax revenue | 26,624,124 | 31,154,178 | 35,332,154 | 4,177,976 | 29,817,365 |
| Transit system operating assistance | | | | | |
| grants | 16,506,873 | 19,143,234 | 19,633,941 | 490,707 | 16,843,203 |
| Interest expense | (841,080) | (684,330) | (697,186) | (12,856) | (909,134) |
| Total nonoperating revenue | 42,389,917 | 49,713,082 | 54,342,431 | 4,629,349 | 46,064,745 |
| Capital Contributions - Capital grants | 6,094,359 | 1,556,153 | 1,409,423 | (146,730) | 3,472,676 |
| Transfers to NTMC | (8,027,839) | (8,214,303) | (6,520,464) | 1,693,839 | (7,555,427) |
| Change in Net Position | 9,538,535 | 9,447,435 | 20,360,399 | 10,912,964 | 13,482,349 |
| Net Position - Beginning of year | 341,283,144 | 341,283,144 | 341,283,144 | | 327,800,795 |
| Net Position - End of year | \$ 350,821,679 | \$ 350,730,579 | \$ 361,643,543 | \$ 10,912,964 | \$ 341,283,144 |

Other Supplemental Information Schedule of Revenue and Expenses - NTMC - Budget to Actual

Year Ended September 30, 2021 (with Comparative Actual for 2020)

| | Original Budget (Unaudited) | Final Budget (Unaudited) | Actual | Variance with Final Budget | 2020 |
|--|--|--|--|---|--|
| Operating Revenues | \$ - | \$ - | \$ - | \$ - | \$ - |
| Operating Expenses Salaries, wages, and benefits Outsourced services and charges Materials and supplies Insurance Employee development | 7,451,314 399,919 3,293 118,878 54,435 | 7,636,554 400,219 3,293 119,802 54,435 | 6,028,468 366,444 603 109,898 15,051 | (1,608,086) (33,775) (2,690) (9,904) (39,384) | 7,211,425 201,117 - 127,872 15,013 |
| Total operating expenses | 8,027,839 | 8,214,303 | 6,520,464 | (1,693,839) | 7,555,427 |
| Transfers from DCTA | 8,027,839 | 8,214,303 | 6,520,464 | (1,693,839) | 7,555,427 |
| Change in Net Position | - | - | - | - | - |
| Net Position - Beginning of year | | | | | |
| Net Position - End of year | \$ - | <u>\$ -</u> | \$ - | \$ - | \$ - |

STATISTICAL SECTION

This section of the Authority's comprehensive financial report presents detailed information as a context for understanding what the information in the financial statements, note disclosures, and required supplementary information says about the Authority's overall conditions.

Contents

Financial Trends

These schedules contain trend information for the past ten years to help the reader understand how the Authority's financial performance and progress have changed over time.

Revenue Capacity

These schedules contain information to help the reader assess the Authority's most significant revenue sources.

Debt Capacity

This schedule presents information to help the reader assess the affordability of the Authority's current level of outstanding debt and the ability to issue additional debt in the future.

Demographic and Economic Information

These schedules offer demographic and economic indicators to help the reader understand the environment in which the Authority's financial activities take place.

Operating Information

These schedules contain service and infrastructure data to help the reader understand how the information in the Authority's financial report relates to the services the Authority provides and the activities it performs.

| | | | - | | | | | | | | | | Net Pos | iti | on by C | on | nponent |
|--|--|--------------------|----------------------|---------|---------------------------|----|---------------------------|----|---------------------------|----|---------------------------|---------------------------------|---------------------------|-----|---------------------------|----|---------------------------|
| | Last Ten Fiscal \ September 30, (Accrual Basis of Accour | | | | | | | | | | | er 30, 2021 | | | | | |
| | 20 | 12 | 2013 | | 2014 | | 2015 | | 2016 | | 2017 | 2018 | 2019 | | 2020 | | 2021 |
| Net position Net investment in capital assets Unrestricted | | 747,102 220,630 | \$ 307,146 15,295 | | 306,190,762 16,048,204 | \$ | 302,581,220 19,337,564 | \$ | 306,005,661 19,422,461 | \$ | 302,425,170 23,662,662 | \$ 296,540,285 29,491,818 | 294,293,446 33,507,349 | \$ | 290,599,617 50,683,527 | \$ | 283,862,328 77,781,215 |
| Total net position | \$ 320,9 | 967,732 | \$ 322,442 | .084 \$ | 322,238,966 | \$ | 321,918,784 | \$ | 325,428,122 | \$ | 326,087,832 | \$ 326,032,103 | \$ 327,800,795 | \$ | 341,283,144 | \$ | 361,643,543 |

Changes in Net Position

Last Ten Fiscal Years September 30, 2021 (Accrual Basis of Accounting)

| | 2012 | 2013 | 2014 | 2015 | 2016 | 2017 | 2018 | 2019 | 2020 | 2021 |
|--|--------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|-----------------|--------------|--------------|---------------|--------------|
| Operating revenues | | | | | | | | | | |
| Passenger revenue | \$ 1,015,813 | \$ 1,265,685 | \$ 1,454,750 | \$ 1,478,840 | \$ 1,406,471 | \$ 1,292,725 \$ | 1,114,734 \$ | 1,357,691 \$ | 833,637 \$ | 548,078 |
| Contract services | 2,927,341 | 2,980,804 | 3,061,389 | 2,935,371 | 3,383,656 | 3,716,481 | 3,416,001 | 4,201,278 | 3,378,826 | 2,923,277 |
| Other | 38,032 | 44,072 | 58,694 | 199,176 | 170,742 | 396,450 | 858,648 | 210,198 | 427,460 | 460,208 |
| Total operating revenues | 3,981,186 | 4,290,561 | 4,574,833 | 4,613,387 | 4,960,869 | 5,405,656 | 5,389,383 | 5,769,167 | 4,639,923 | 3,931,563 |
| Operating expenses | | | | | | | | | | |
| Salaries, wages, and benefits | 6,293,238 | 6,702,365 | 7,658,566 | 8,346,152 | 9,144,246 | 10,425,981 | 11,137,613 | 12,367,693 | 11,609,934 | 9,973,966 |
| Outsourced services and charges | 1,431,693 | 1,628,119 | 1,937,441 | 2,722,176 | 2,598,749 | 6,209,389 | 4,348,623 | 6,202,321 | 4,884,281 | 5,395,088 |
| Materials and supplies | 3,010,582 | 3,071,662 | 2,891,739 | 2,528,741 | 2,036,382 | 2,317,170 | 2,508,020 | 2,445,770 | 1,922,266 | 1,087,452 |
| Utilities | 396,248 | 415,341 | 416,818 | 472,391 | 404,896 | 427,013 | 439,476 | 445,809 | 431,838 | 431,998 |
| Insurance | 362,960 | 625,788 | 775,986 | 780,112 | 849,981 | 1,600,932 | 1,707,909 | 1,697,189 | 1,783,994 | 1,822,821 |
| Purchased transportation services | 7,605,436 | 8,874,900 | 9,632,780 | 10,080,919 | 10,666,292 | 10,587,125 | 8,980,451 | 9,755,585 | 10,091,453 | 10,302,946 |
| Leases and rentals | 943,160 | 349,592 | 352,479 | 124,645 | 158,251 | 248,128 | 213,497 | 221,903 | 226,632 | 224,889 |
| Employee development | 126,190 | 144,743 | 123,609 | 186,598 | 184,509 | 203,467 | 274,072 | 281,968 | 185,785 | 97,423 |
| Transportation reinvestment program | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | 29,798 |
| Depreciation | 6,901,760 | 8,613,310 | 8,875,337 | 9,337,505 | 9,854,907 | 9,986,476 | 10,202,356 | 9,813,483 | 9,558,814 | 9,956,637 |
| Total operating expenses | 27,071,267 | 30,425,820 | 32,664,755 | 34,579,239 | 35,898,213 | 42,005,681 | 39,812,017 | 43,231,721 | 40,694,995 | 39,323,018 |
| Operating loss | (23,090,081) | (26,135,259) | (28,089,922) | (29,965,852) | (30,937,344) | (36,600,025) | (34,422,634) | (37,462,554) | (36,055,072) | (35,391,455) |
| Non-operating revenues (expenses) | | | | | | | | | | |
| Sales tax revenue | 19,009,135 | 20,209,051 | 21,367,086 | 23,261,748 | 24,658,546 | 26,790,098 | 27,937,707 | 28,735,383 | 29,817,365 | 35,332,154 |
| Capital grants | 7,127,088 | 5,922,358 | 4,263,522 | 2,636,956 | 5,769,630 | 6,532,885 | 1,631,747 | 4,187,777 | 3,472,676 | 1,409,423 |
| Transit system operating assistance grants | 3,183,057 | 3,100,729 | 3,410,607 | 4,985,908 | 5,130,046 | 4,900,401 | 5,484,450 | 6,664,660 | 16,843,203 | 19,633,941 |
| Investment income | 53,927 | 32,137 | 21,100 | 24,772 | 59,364 | 122,250 | 350,924 | 597,793 | 320,793 | 31,178 |
| Interest expense | (1,486,881) | (1,449,718) | (1,247,357) | (1,211,899) | (1,156,229) | (1,098,107) | (1,040,263) | (972,668) | (909,134) | (697,186) |
| Bond issuance costs and fees | (12,219) | (213,096) | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Gain (loss) on sale of assets | 52,269 | 8,150 | 22,825 | (51,815) | (14,675) | 12,208 | 2,340 | 18,301 | (7,482) | 42,344 |
| Total non-operating revenues (expenses) | 27,926,376 | 27,609,611 | 27,837,783 | 29,645,670 | 34,446,682 | 37,259,735 | 34,366,905 | 39,231,246 | 49,537,421 | 55,751,854 |
| Change in net position | \$ 4,836,295 | \$ 1,474,352 | \$ (252,139) | \$ (320,182) | \$ 3,509,338 | 659,710 \$ | (55,729) \$ | 1,768,692 \$ | 13,482,349 \$ | 20,360,399 |

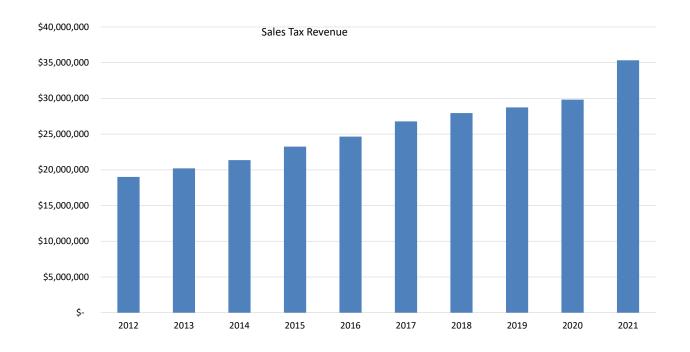
| | | | | | | | | | Capi | tal Assets |
|--|----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|
| | | | | | | | | | Last Ter | Fiscal Years |
| | 2012 | 2013 | 2014 | 2015 | 2016 | 2017 | 2018 | 2019 | 2020 | 2021 |
| Capital assets not being depreciated: | | | | | | | | | | |
| Land | \$ 16,228,337 | \$ 16,228,337 | \$ 16,228,337 | \$ 16,228,337 | \$ 16,228,337 | \$ 17,394,147 | \$ 17,394,147 | \$ 17,394,147 | \$ 17,394,147 | \$ 17,394,147 |
| Construction in progress | 19,504,570 | 20,713,356 | 10,900,642 | 9,866,224 | 13,785,056 | 18,124,446 | 18,251,850 | 20,536,649 | 20,014,331 | 2,765,189 |
| Total capital assets not being depreciated | 35,732,907 | 36,941,693 | 27,128,979 | 26,094,561 | 30,013,393 | 35,518,593 | 35,645,997 | 37,930,796 | 37,408,478 | 20,159,336 |
| Other capital assets being depreciated: | | | | | | | | | | |
| Rail assets | 286,261,767 | 295,548,514 | 276,138,293 | 278,300,390 | 282,218,725 | 282,218,725 | 283,178,861 | 283,178,861 | 283,178,861 | 300,547,954 |
| Land improvements | 5,386,734 | 5,386,734 | 5,386,734 | 6,458,821 | 6,458,821 | 6,458,821 | 6,874,492 | 9,017,865 | 12,166,783 | 12,158,726 |
| Vehicles and operating equipment | 8,261,725 | 8,261,725 | 8,940,025 | 8,370,679 | 9,997,320 | 10,228,999 | 11,444,904 | 12,698,164 | 12,584,752 | 12,982,287 |
| Leasehold improvements | 55,506 | 55,506 | 55,506 | 55,506 | 55,506 | - | - | - | - | - |
| Office furniture and equipment | 1,077,612 | 1,379,286 | 1,958,428 | 3,211,034 | 3,935,542 | 5,272,885 | 5,426,024 | 5,567,481 | 7,035,417 | 7,035,417 |
| Facilities | - | - | 32,843,448 | 32,843,448 | 32,843,448 | 31,760,649 | 31,760,649 | 31,760,649 | 31,760,649 | 31,760,649 |
| Easement | 16,997,155 | 16,997,155 | 16,997,155 | 16,997,155 | 16,997,155 | 16,997,155 | 16,997,155 | 16,997,155 | 16,997,155 | 16,997,155 |
| Total other capital assets | 318,040,499 | 327,628,920 | 342,319,589 | 346,237,033 | 352,506,517 | 352,937,234 | 355,682,085 | 359,220,175 | 363,723,617 | 381,482,188 |
| Less accumulated depreciation: | | | | | | | | | | |
| Rail assets | 4,840,193 | 12,681,356 | 18,028,395 | 24,381,744 | 30,883,870 | 37,160,734 | 43,449,134 | 49,779,910 | 56,110,686 | 62,875,689 |
| Land improvements | 284,202 | 665,279 | 944,428 | 1,088,981 | 1,377,500 | 1,666,020 | 1,965,624 | 2,327,927 | 2,788,304 | 3,275,067 |
| Vehicles and operating equipment | 4,738,045 | 4,170,403 | 4,941,135 | 4,964,966 | 5,775,080 | 6,756,251 | 7,779,318 | 8,513,300 | 9,190,031 | 9,237,141 |
| Leasehold improvements | 55,506 | 55,506 | 55,506 | 55,506 | 55,506 | - | - | - | - | - |
| Office furniture and equipment | 349,772 | 454,902 | 713,240 | 1,000,296 | 1,604,281 | 2,389,010 | 3,424,947 | 4,148,347 | 4,640,797 | 5,086,158 |
| Facilities | - | - | 1,370,221 | 2,121,496 | 2,850,881 | 3,484,184 | 4,189,674 | 4,895,163 | 5,600,653 | 6,306,143 |
| Easement | 1,977,500 | 2,832,859 | 3,682,717 | 4,532,575 | 5,382,432 | 6,232,290 | 7,082,148 | 7,932,006 | 8,781,863 | 9,631,721 |
| Total accumulated depreciation | 12,245,218 | 20,860,305 | 29,735,642 | 38,145,564 | 47,929,550 | 57,688,489 | 67,890,845 | 77,596,653 | 87,112,334 | 96,411,919 |
| Total capital assets, net | \$ 341,528,188 | \$ 343,710,308 | \$ 339,712,926 | \$ 334,186,030 | \$ 334,590,360 | \$ 330,767,338 | \$ 323,437,237 | \$ 319,554,318 | \$ 314,019,761 | \$ 305,229,605 |

| | | | | | | | | R | evenue by | Source | | | |
|---------------------------|---------------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|-----------------|------------|--|--|--|
| | | | | | | | | | Last Ten Fiscal | | | | |
| | 2012 | 2013 | 2014 | 2015 | 2016 | 2017 | 2018 | 2019 | 2020 | 2021 | | | |
| Revenue: | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Sales tax | \$ 19,009,135 \$ | 20,209,051 \$ | 21,367,086 \$ | 23,261,748 \$ | 24,658,546 \$ | 26,790,098 \$ | 27,937,707 \$ | 28,735,383 \$ | 29,817,365 \$ | 35,332,154 | | | |
| Passenger revenues | 1,015,813 | 1,265,685 | 1,454,750 | 1,478,840 | 1,406,471 | 1,292,725 | 1,114,734 | 1,357,691 | 833,637 | 548,078 | | | |
| Contract service revenues | 2,965,373 | 3,024,876 | 3,120,083 | 3,134,547 | 3,554,398 | 4,112,931 | 4,274,649 | 4,411,476 | 3,806,286 | 3,383,485 | | | |
| Investment income | 53,927 | 32,137 | 21,100 | 24,772 | 59,364 | 122,250 | 350,924 | 597,793 | 320,793 | 31,178 | | | |
| Grant revenues | 10,310,145 | 9,023,087 | 7,674,129 | 7,622,864 | 10,899,676 | 11,433,286 | 7,116,197 | 10,852,437 | 20,315,879 | 21,043,364 | | | |
| Other revenues | 52,269 | 8,150 | 22,825 | (51,815) | (14,675) | 12,208 | 2,340 | 18,301 | (7,482) | 42,344 | | | |
| Total revenue | \$ 33,406,662 \$ | 33,562,986 \$ | 33,659,973 \$ | 35,470,956 \$ | 40,563,780 \$ | 43,763,498 \$ | 40,796,551 \$ | 45,973,081 \$ | 55,086,478 \$ | 60,380,603 | | | |

| | | | | | | | | S | Sales Tax l | Revenue |
|---|---------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|-------------|---------------|
| | | | | | | | | | Last Ten | Fiscal Years |
| | 2012 | 2013 | 2014 | 2015 | 2016 | 2017 | 2018 | 2019 | 2020 | 2021 |
| Sales Tax Revenue | \$ 19,009,135 | \$ 20,209,051 | \$ 21,367,086 | \$ 23,261,748 | \$ 24,658,546 | \$ 26,790,098 | \$ 27,937,707 | \$ 28,735,383 | 29,817,365 | \$ 35,332,154 |
| Compounded Percent Change from Base Year ⁽¹⁾ | | 6.3% | 12.4% | 22.4% | 29.7% | 40.9% | 47.0% | 51.2% | 56.9% | 85.9% |
| Percent Change from Prior Year | | 6.3% | 5.7% | 8.9% | 6.0% | 8.6% | 4.3% | 2.9% | 3.8% | 18.5% |
| Average Growth | | | | | | | | | | 7.2% |

Sources: Texas Comptroller of Public Accounts and DCTA Finance Department

Notes:



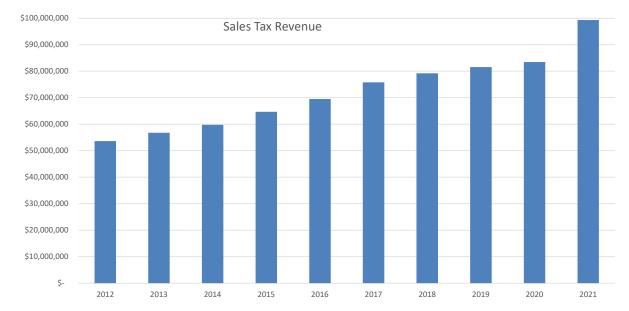
⁽¹⁾ Base Year for 2013 through 2021 is 2012.

Sales Tax Allocation Received by Member Cities

Last Ten Fiscal Years

| | 2012 | 2013 | 2014 | 2015 | 2016 | 2017 | 2018 | 2019 | 2020 | 2021 |
|--------------------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|------------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|------------|
| City of Denton | \$ 24,367,672 | \$ 24,954,131 | \$ 26,062,974 | \$ 28,717,159 \$ | 30,745,434 \$ | 34,956,511 \$ | 36,276,094 \$ | 36,402,338 \$ | 37,398,228 \$ | 43,498,977 |
| City of Highland Village | 3,196,265 | 3,244,944 | 3,514,486 | 3,591,789 | 3,695,262 | 3,727,797 | 3,804,755 | 4,154,270 | 4,144,890 | 4,596,666 |
| City of Lewisville | 26,061,918 | 28,564,305 | 30,175,350 | 32,359,597 | 35,063,635 | 37,100,766 | 39,118,841 | 40,976,630 | 41,904,104 | 51,215,079 |
| Total | \$ 53,625,855 | \$ 56,763,380 | \$ 59,752,810 | \$ 64,668,545 \$ | 69,504,331 \$ | 75,785,074 \$ | 79,199,690 \$ | 81,533,238 \$ | 83,447,222 \$ | 99,310,722 |

Source: Texas Comptroller of Public Accounts allocation of sales tax receipts by city.



Long-term Debt Last Ten Fiscal Years

| Fiscal Year | Ref | es Tax Revenue unding Bonds, eries 2009 ⁽¹⁾ | Contractual Obligations, eries 2011 ⁽¹⁾ | Re | les Tax Revenue efunding Bonds, Series 2020 ⁽¹⁾ | Sales Tax Revenue Refunding Bonds, Series 2021 ⁽¹⁾ | | Total | Percentage of Personal Income ⁽²⁾ | Per Capita ⁽³⁾ | · |
|-------------|-----|--|--|----|--|---|---|--------------|---|-------------------------------|----|
| 2012 | \$ | 20,890,000 | \$ 14,390,000 | \$ | - | \$ - | | \$35,280,000 | 0.15% | \$ 51.0 | 65 |
| 2013 | | 20,005,000 | 14,390,000 | | - | - | - | 34,395,000 | 0.15% | 49. | 56 |
| 2014 | | 19,085,000 | 14,390,000 | | - | - | - | 33,475,000 | 0.14% | 46.9 | 94 |
| 2015 | | 18,130,000 | 13,835,000 | | - | - | - | 31,965,000 | 0.12% | 43.4 | 49 |
| 2016 | | 17,135,000 | 13,250,000 | | - | - | - | 30,385,000 | 0.11% | 38. | 71 |
| 2017 | | 16,105,000 | 12,635,000 | | - | - | - | 28,740,000 | 0.09% | 35.2 | 28 |
| 2018 | | 15,030,000 | 11,990,000 | | - | - | - | 27,020,000 | 0.08% | 32.0 | 00 |
| 2019 | | 13,915,000 | 11,315,000 | | - | - | - | 25,230,000 | 0.07% | 28. | 86 |
| 2020 | | 12,755,000 | 10,605,000 | | - | - | - | 23,360,000 | (A) | 25.9 | 92 |
| 2021 | | - | - | | 11,325,000 | 9,940,000 |) | 21,265,000 | (A) | 22. | 79 |

Sources:

Notes:

(A) Certain portions of the above data have been omitted as the information is not available to DCTA at this time.

⁽¹⁾ DCTA Finance Department

⁽²⁾ Personal income from U.S. Census Bureau, American Community Survey

⁽³⁾ Population from Regional Data Center, North Central Texas Council of Governments (NCTCOG) estimates

Demographic and Economic Statistics for Denton County

Last Ten Fiscal Years

| | | Personal Income (in | Education Level in ersonal Income (in Per Capita Personal Years of Formal | | | | | | | | |
|-------------|----------------|---------------------|--|----------------|---------------|-----------------------|-------------------|--|--|--|--|
| Fiscal Year | Population (1) | Thousands) (2) | Income (2) | Median Age (2) | Schooling (2) | School Enrollment (2) | Unemployment Rate | | | | |
| 2012 | 683,010 | \$ 22,938,891 | \$ 33,585 | 33.0 | 14.0 | 209,157 | 5.6% | | | | |
| 2013 | 694,050 | 23,497,063 | 33,855 | 33.4 | 14.1 | 215,359 | 5.4% | | | | |
| 2014 | 713,200 | 24,625,370 | 34,528 | 33.8 | 14.1 | 219,368 | 4.5% | | | | |
| 2015 | 734,970 | 25,660,743 | 34,914 | 34.2 | 14.1 | 223,446 | 3.4% | | | | |
| 2016 | 784,840 | 28,441,032 | 36,238 | 34.5 | 14.1 | 224,226 | 3.6% | | | | |
| 2017 | 814,560 | 30,894,632 | 37,928 | 34.9 | 14.2 | 228,173 | 3.1% | | | | |
| 2018 | 844,260 | 34,587,644 | 40,968 | 35.8 | 14.4 | 242,860 | 3.1% | | | | |
| 2019 | 874,240 | 37,742,689 | 43,172 | 36.0 | 14.3 | 249,086 | 2.8% | | | | |
| 2020 | 901,120 | (A) | (A) | (A) | (A) | (A) | 6.3% | | | | |
| 2021 | 933,220 | (A) | (A) | (A) | (A) | (A) | 3.9% | | | | |

Sources:

Notes:

(A) Certain portions of the above data have been omitted as the information is not available to DCTA at this time.

⁽¹⁾ Regional Data Center, North Central Texas Council of Governments (NCTCOG) estimates

⁽²⁾ U.S. Census Bureau, American Community Survey

⁽³⁾ Texas Workforce Commission, data for September of respective year

Principal Employers in Denton County

September 30, 2021 and Nine Years Ago

| | | | 2021 | L | | 2012 | 2 |
|--|-------------------------------|------|---------------|----------------|------|---------------|----------------|
| | | | Estimated | Percentage of | | Estimated | Percentage of |
| | | | Number of | Total | | Number of | Total |
| 10 Largest Employers | Industry | Rank | Employees (1) | Employment (2) | Rank | Employees (1) | Employment (2) |
| Lewisville Independent School District | Education | 1 | 6,363 | 1.27% | 2 | 6,508 | 1.77% |
| Charles Schwab Corp | Finance/Insurance | 2 | 6,000 | 1.20% | - | (A) | (A) |
| Wal-Mart | Retail | 3 | 4,876 | 0.97% | 3 | 3,900 | 1.06% |
| University of North Texas | Education | 4 | 4,614 | 0.92% | 1 | 7,762 | 2.11% |
| Denton Independent School District | Education | 5 | 4,417 | 0.88% | 4 | 3,266 | 0.89% |
| Peterbilt Motors Co. | Manufacturing | 6 | 3,075 | 0.61% | 8 | 2,100 | 0.57% |
| Northwest Independent School District | Education | 7 | 2,694 | 0.54% | 9 | 1,636 | 0.44% |
| Nebraska Furniture Mart | Retail | 8 | 2,000 | 0.40% | - | (A) | (A) |
| Texas Woman's University | Education | 9 | 1,875 | 0.37% | - | (A) | (A) |
| Frito Lay | Food Distribution | 10 | 1,712 | 0.34% | 6 | 2,500 | 0.68% |
| Centex Home Equity | Finance/Insurance | | | | 5 | 2,600 | 0.71% |
| American Airlines Alliance | Transportation | | | | 7 | 2,154 | 0.58% |
| Denton State School | Health Care/Social Assistance | | | | 10 | 1,500 | 0.41% |
| | | | 37,626 | 7.52% | | 33,926 | 9.20% |

Sources:

Notes:

(A) Certain portions of the above data have been omitted as the information is not available to DCTA at this time.

⁽¹⁾ North Central Texas Council of Governments (NCTCOG) Regional Data Center, various cities, chambers of commerce, school districts

⁽²⁾ Texas Workforce Commission

Total Employees and Contract Operations **Last Ten Fiscal Years** 2015 2017 2018 2019 2012 2013 2014 2016 2020 2021 **Employee Count** DCTA - Administration 18.00 22.00 23.75 26.75 27.25 29.75 33.75 42.50 35.50 36.00 Third Party Contract Operations: **Bus Services** 119.00 126.00 137.00 140.50 152.00 132.50 141.00 139.50 137.00 118.00 154.00 Total Full Time Equivalents (FTEs) 137.00 148.00 160.75 167.25 179.25 162.25 174.75 182.00 172.50

Sources: DCTA Finance Department

Notes:

Note 1: Figures represent total budgeted FTEs.

Note 2: Third party contract bus operations include TMDC employees in previous years and NTMC employees starting with FY19.

| | | | | | | | | | Operating S | |
|--|-----------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|--------------|
| | | | | | | | | | Last Ten | Fiscal Years |
| | 2012 | 2013 | 2014 | 2015 | 2016 | 2017 | 2018 | 2019 | 2020 | 2021 |
| Actual Vehicle Revenue Miles | | | | | | | | | | |
| Demand Response Directly Operated Transportation | 244,606 | 237,817 | 236,203 | 226,065 | 276,159 | 260,833 | 264,591 | 284,103 | 204,413 | 135,902 |
| Fixed Route Bus Directly Operated Transportation | 1,269,081 | 1,213,224 | 1,223,746 | 1,403,748 | 1,482,110 | 1,626,952 | 1,625,327 | 1,643,943 | 1,307,863 | 1,190,682 |
| A-train Rail Purchased Transportation | 250,758 | 299,037 | 313,062 | 326,217 | 334,468 | 338,751 | 328,658 | 335,611 | 579,625 | 501,786 |
| VanPool Purchased Transportation | 38,478 | 360,277 | 461,253 | 618,963 | 822,901 | 785,538 | 689,889 | 718,019 | 1,005,519 | 1,491,900 |
| Demand Response Taxi Purchased Transportation | - | - | - | - | - | 13,766 | 61,695 | 97,277 | 67,987 | 67,179 |
| Demand Response Purchased Transportation | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | 64,204 |
| Total Actual Vehicle Revenue Miles | 1,802,923 | 2,110,354 | 2,234,264 | 2,574,993 | 2,915,638 | 3,025,840 | 2,970,160 | 3,078,953 | 3,165,407 | 3,451,653 |
| Actual Vehicle Revenue Hours | | | | | | | | | | |
| Demand Response Directly Operated Transportation | 16,975 | 17,407 | 17,655 | 17,614 | 24,452 | 24,659 | 21,031 | 21,741 | 15,993 | 11,841 |
| Fixed Route Bus Directly Operated Transportation | 96,479 | 99,468 | 104,932 | 116,874 | 126,214 | 135,091 | 137,411 | 138,881 | 105,124 | 89,675 |
| A-train Rail Purchased Transportation | 10,121 | 11,125 | 12,215 | 13,149 | 13,580 | 13,511 | 13,208 | 13,765 | 26,354 | 23,285 |
| VanPool Purchased Transportation | 1,023 | 7,044 | 9,079 | 11,072 | 14,706 | 14,689 | 14,935 | 17,842 | 23,778 | 26,970 |
| Demand Response Taxi Purchased Transportation | - | - | - | - | - | 1,097 | 3,969 | 6,209 | 4,129 | 4,017 |
| Demand Response Purchased Transportation | | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | 4,470 |
| Total Actual Vehicle Revenue Hours | 124,598 | 135,044 | 143,881 | 158,709 | 178,952 | 189,047 | 190,554 | 198,438 | 175,378 | 160,258 |
| Total Annual Unlinked Passenger Trips - Bus | 2,588,802 | 2,502,586 | 2,259,168 | 2,400,699 | 2,396,220 | 2,458,623 | 2,426,039 | 2,403,728 | 1,339,577 | 724,239 |
| Total Annual Unlinked Passenger Trips - Rail | 387,126 | 510,738 | 568,338 | 555,423 | 545,250 | 504,958 | 419,335 | 393,700 | 221,316 | 113,440 |
| Total Annual Unlinked Passenger Trips - VanPool | 5,764 | 66,294 | 80,235 | 134,662 | 199,044 | 145,020 | 128,088 | 128,171 | 154,812 | 216,451 |
| Total Annual Unlinked Passenger Trips - Taxi | - | - | - | - | - | 1,716 | 7,576 | 13,710 | 10,568 | 10,248 |
| | 2,981,692 | 3,079,618 | 2,907,741 | 3,090,784 | 3,140,514 | 3,110,317 | 2,981,038 | 2,939,309 | 1,726,273 | 1,064,378 |
| Annual Passenger Miles | | | | | | | | | | |
| Demand Response Directly Operated Transportation | 221,474 | 237,922 | 236,238 | 226,214 | 258,644 | 202,774 | 204,529 | 260,791 | 195,020 | 135,764 |
| Fixed Route Bus Directly Operated Transportation | 7,818,249 | 7,415,162 | 6,092,976 | 7,132,608 | 6,322,593 | 5,918,759 | 5,828,301 | 5,748,291 | 3,182,297 | 1,675,782 |
| A-train Rail Purchased Transportation | 5,724,715 | 7,637,399 | 8,339,421 | 8,175,102 | 8,000,309 | 7,298,558 | 5,901,029 | 5,493,329 | 3,039,904 | 1,531,530 |
| VanPool Purchased Transportation | 167,761 | 1,906,523 | 3,413,865 | 3,258,528 | 6,439,172 | 6,119,250 | 5,618,838 | 5,787,405 | 7,205,612 | 10,788,190 |
| Demand Response Taxi Purchased Transportation | - | - | - | - | - | 13,923 | 61,441 | 97,339 | 68,014 | 67,302 |
| Demand Response Purchased Transportation | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | 53,733 |
| Total Annual Passenger Miles | 13,932,199 | 17,197,007 | 18,082,500 | 18,792,452 | 21,020,718 | 19,553,264 | 17,614,138 | 17,387,155 | 13,690,847 | 14,252,301 |
| Operating Expenses | | | | | | | | | | |
| Demand Response Directly Operated Transportation | \$ 1,383,900 \$ | 1,478,366 \$ | 1,569,707 \$ | 1,429,741 \$ | 1,703,434 \$ | 2,225,894 \$ | 2,421,592 \$ | 3,027,013 \$ | 2,557,881 \$ | 1,967,427 |
| Fixed Route Bus Directly Operated Transportation | 7,994,301 | 8,456,825 | 9,179,521 | 9,934,604 | 10,956,771 | 11,877,132 | 12,657,498 | 13,838,874 | 13,165,615 | 11,555,180 |
| A-train Rail Purchased Transportation | 9,787,380 | 11,319,050 | 12,402,812 | 13,429,333 | 12,757,014 | 13,528,182 | 13,680,466 | 14,464,826 | 14,086,602 | 13,623,014 |
| VanPool Purchased Transportation | 57,969 | 221,587 | 327,211 | 356,865 | 430,362 | 392,099 | 386,401 | 424,355 | 605,410 | 735,614 |
| Demand Response Taxi Purchased Transportation | - | - | - | - | -30,302 | 187,927 | 281,604 | 364,491 | 303,210 | 374,351 |
| Demand Response Purchased Transportation | _ | - | _ | _ | _ | - | - | - | - | 620,655 |
| Total Operating Expenses | \$ 19,223,550 | 21,475,827 \$ | 23,479,251 \$ | 25,150,543 \$ | 25,847,581 \$ | 28,211,234 \$ | 29,427,561 \$ | 32,119,559 \$ | 30,718,718 \$ | 28,876,241 |

Actual Vehicle Revenue Miles: The miles a vehicle travels while in revenue service. This definition includes layover and recovery, but excludes travel to and from storage facilities, the training of operators prior to revenue service, road tests, deadhead travel, and school bus and charter service. FY 2015 includes special service. For A-train, this is defined as revenue train miles.

Actual Vehicle Revenue Hours: The hours a vehicle travels while in revenue service. This definition includes layover and recovery, but excludes travel to and from storage facilities, the training of operators prior to revenue service, road tests, deadhead travel, and school bus and charter service. Fy 2015 includes special service. For A-train, this is defined as revenue train hours.

Unlinked Passenger Trips: The number of passengers who board public transportation vehicles. A passenger is counted each time the passenger boards a vehicle even though the passenger might be on the same journey from origin to destination. FY 2015 includes special service.

Annual Passenger Miles: The sum of miles traveled by passengers, calculated by multiplying the average miles traveled per passenger by the total number of boardings.

Source: National Transit Database

| | | | | | | | Fareb | ox Reco | very Pero | centage |
|--|--------|--------|------------|------------------|-----------------|----------------|--------|---------|--------------|----------|
| | | | | | | | | | Last Ten Fis | |
| | 2012 | 2013 | 2014 | 2015 | 2016 | 2017 | 2018 | 2019 | 2020 | 2021 |
| Farebox Recovery - Bus | 47.65% | 46.30% | 46.07% | 42.73% | 44.14% | 41.25% | 36.35% | 39.51% | 33.04% | 31.76% |
| Farebox Recovery - Rail | 5.51% | 6.53% | 6.87% | 6.15% | 6.17% | 5.36% | 5.33% | 5.25% | 3.29% | 2.10% |
| | | | Fare St | ructure at 9/30 | /2021 | | | | | |
| Local System (Bus & Rail) | | | <u>R</u> c | egional (Bus & I | Rail) | | | | | |
| Local System AM/PM Pass | \$ | 1.50 | Re | egional Day Pass | 5 | | | | \$ | 12.00 |
| Local System AM/PM Reduced* | | 0.75 | Re | egional Day Pass | Reduced* | | | | | 3.00 |
| Local System Day Pass | | 3.00 | Re | egional 10 Pack | of Day Passes | | | | | 84.00 |
| Local System Day Pass Reduced* | | 1.50 | Re | egional Monthly | /31-Day Pass | | | | | 192.00 |
| Local System 7-Day Pass | | 15.00 | Re | egional Monthly | /31-Day Pass Re | educed* | | | | 48.00 |
| Local System 10 Pack of Day Passes | | 20.00 | Re | egional Annual I | Pass | | | | | 1,920.00 |
| Local System Monthly/31-Day Pass | | 48.00 | Re | egional Annual I | Pass Reduced* | | | | | 576.00 |
| Local System Monthly/31-Day Pass Reduced* | | 24.00 | Re | egional Universi | ty Full Semeste | r Pass** | | | | 240.00 |
| Local System Annual Pass | | 480.00 | Re | egional Universi | ty Summer Sem | ester Pass** | | | | 144.00 |
| Local System Annual Pass Reduced* | | 240.00 | Re | egional Universi | ty Annual Pass* | * | | | | 576.00 |
| Local System University Full Semester Pass** | | 120.00 | | | | | | | | |
| Local System University Summer Semester Pas | S** | 72.00 | <u>A</u> | ccess | | | | | | |
| Local System University Annual Pass** | | 240.00 | Ad | ccess One-Way | Trip | | | | | 3.00 |
| | | | Ad | ccess 10-Ride Bo | ook | | | | | 30.00 |
| GoZone On-Demand Micro-Transit | | | | | | | | | | |
| Single Trip | | 0.75 | <u>Cc</u> | ollin County Tra | nsit Demand Re | <u>esponse</u> | | | | |
| | | | Во | parding fare | | | | | | 2.25 |
| Frisco Demand Response | | | | Plus fare per m | nile | | | | | 1.80 |
| One-Way Local Trip | | 3.00 | | | | | | | | |
| One-Way Regional Trip | | 5.00 | | | | | | | | |

Farebox recovery ratio is a proportion of the amount of revenue generated through fares by its paying customers including contract services as a fraction of the cost of its total operating expenses without depreciation expense.

Source: DCTA Finance Department

^{*} Reduced = Seniors (65+), disabled (with DCTA issued ID), Medicare cardholders, and students (Ages 5-18, students over the age of 14 require a valid high school or DCTA issued ID)

^{**} Students, faculty or staff attending colleges with physical campuses within Denton County are eligible to participate in the University Pass Program. Proof of enrollment/employment is required.



Federal Awards Supplemental Information September 30, 2021

Contents

Independent Auditor's Reports Report on Schedule of Expenditures of Federal Awards Required by the Uniform Guidance

1

Report on Internal Control Over Financial Reporting and on Compliance and Other Matters Based on an Audit of Financial Statements Performed in Accordance with *Government Auditing Standards*

2-3

Report on Compliance for Each Major Federal Program and Report on Internal Control Over Compliance Required by the Uniform Guidance

4-5

Schedule of Expenditures of Federal Awards

6

Notes to Schedule of Expenditures of Federal Awards

7

Schedule of Findings and Questioned Costs

8



Plante & Moran, PLLC

Suite 360 4444 W. Bristol Road Flint, MI 48507 Tel: 810.767.5350 Fax: 810.767.8150 plantemoran.com

Report on Schedule of Expenditures of Federal Awards Required by the Uniform Guidance

Independent Auditor's Report

To the Board of Directors
Denton County Transportation Authority

We have audited the financial statements of the Denton County Transportation Authority (the "Authority") as of and for the year ended September 30, 2021 and the related notes to the financial statements, which collectively comprise the Authority's basic financial statements. We issued our report thereon dated February 9, 2022, which contained an unmodified opinion on the financial statements. Our audit was conducted for the purpose of forming an opinion on the financial statements as a whole. We have not performed any procedures with respect to the audited financial statements subsequent to February 9, 2022.

The accompanying schedule of expenditures of federal awards is presented for the purpose of additional analysis, as required by the Uniform Guidance, and is not a required part of the basic financial statements. Such information is the responsibility of management and was derived from and relates directly to the underlying accounting and other records used to prepare the basic financial statements. The information has been subjected to the auditing procedures applied in the audit of the financial statements and certain additional procedures, including comparing and reconciling such information directly to the underlying accounting and other records used to prepare the basic financial statements or to the basic financial statements themselves, and other additional procedures in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America. In our opinion, the information is fairly stated in all material respects in relation to the basic financial statements as a whole.

Plante & Moran, PLLC

February 9, 2022





Plante & Moran, PLLC

Suite 360
4444 W. Bristol Road
Flint, MI 48507
Tel: 810.767.5350
Fax: 810.767.8150
plantemoran.com

Report on Internal Control Over Financial Reporting and on Compliance and Other Matters Based on an Audit of Financial Statements Performed in Accordance with *Government Auditing Standards*

Independent Auditor's Report

To Management and the Board of Directors Denton County Transportation Authority

We have audited, in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America and the standards applicable to financial audits contained in *Government Auditing Standards* issued by the Comptroller General of the United States, the financial statements of the Denton County Transportation Authority (the "Authority") as of and for the year ended September 30, 2021 and the related notes to the financial statements, which collectively comprise the Authority's basic financial statements, and have issued our report thereon dated February 9, 2022.

Internal Control Over Financial Reporting

In planning and performing our audit of the financial statements, we considered the Authority's internal control over financial reporting (internal control) as a basis for designing audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances for the purpose of expressing our opinion on the financial statements, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the Authority's internal control. Accordingly, we do not express an opinion on the effectiveness of the Authority's internal control.

A deficiency in internal control exists when the design or operation of a control does not allow management or employees, in the normal course of performing their assigned functions, to prevent, or detect and correct, misstatements on a timely basis. A material weakness is a deficiency, or a combination of deficiencies, in internal control such that there is a reasonable possibility that a material misstatement of the Authority's financial statements will not be prevented, or detected and corrected, on a timely basis. A significant deficiency is a deficiency, or a combination of deficiencies, in internal control that is less severe than a material weakness, yet important enough to merit attention by those charged with governance.

Our consideration of internal control was for the limited purpose described in the first paragraph of this section and was not designed to identify all deficiencies in internal control that might be material weaknesses or significant deficiencies. Given these limitations, during our audit we did not identify any deficiencies in internal control that we consider to be material weaknesses. However, material weaknesses may exist that have not been identified.

Compliance and Other Matters

As part of obtaining reasonable assurance about whether the Authority's financial statements are free from material misstatement, we performed tests of its compliance with certain provisions of laws, regulations, contracts, and grant agreements, noncompliance with which could have a direct and material effect on the financial statements. However, providing an opinion on compliance with those provisions was not an objective of our audit, and, accordingly, we do not express such an opinion. The results of our tests disclosed no instances of noncompliance or other matters that are required to be reported under *Government Auditing Standards*.



To Management and the Board of Directors Denton County Transportation Authority

Purpose of This Report

The purpose of this report is solely to describe the scope of our testing of internal control and compliance and the results of that testing, and not to provide an opinion on the effectiveness of the Authority's internal control or on compliance. This report is an integral part of an audit performed in accordance with *Government Auditing Standards* in considering the Authority's internal control and compliance. Accordingly, this communication is not suitable for any other purpose.

Plante & Moran, PLLC

February 9, 2022



Plante & Moran, PLLC

Suite 360 Suite 360 4444 W. Bristol Road Flint, MI 48507 Tel: 810.767.5350 Fax: 810.767.8150 plantemoran.com

Report on Compliance for Each Major Federal Program and Report on Internal Control Over Compliance Required by the Uniform Guidance

Independent Auditor's Report

To the Board of Directors

Denton County Transportation Authority

Report on Compliance for Each Major Federal Program

We have audited the Denton County Transportation Authority's (the "Authority") compliance with the types of compliance requirements described in the U.S. Office of Management and Budget (OMB) Compliance Supplement that could have a direct and material effect on the Authority's major federal program for the year ended September 30, 2021. The Authority's major federal program is identified in the summary of auditor's results section of the accompanying schedule of findings and questioned costs.

Management's Responsibility

Management is responsible for compliance with federal statutes, regulations, and the terms and conditions of its federal awards applicable to its federal program.

Auditor's Responsibility

Our responsibility is to express an opinion on compliance for each of the Authority's major federal programs based on our audit of the types of compliance requirements referred to above.

We conducted our audit of compliance in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America; the standards applicable to financial audits contained in *Government Auditing Standards*, issued by the Comptroller General of the United States; and the audit requirements of Title 2 U.S. Code of Federal Regulations Part 200, *Uniform Administrative Requirements, Cost Principles, and Audit Requirements for Federal Awards* (the "Uniform Guidance"). Those standards and the Uniform Guidance require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether noncompliance with the types of compliance requirements referred to above that could have a direct and material effect on a major federal program occurred. An audit includes examining, on a test basis, evidence about the Authority's compliance with those requirements and performing such other procedures as we considered necessary in the circumstances.

We believe that our audit provides a reasonable basis for our opinion on compliance for each major federal program. However, our audit does not provide a legal determination of the Authority's compliance.

Opinion on Each Major Federal Program

In our opinion, the Authority complied, in all material respects, with the types of compliance requirements referred to above that could have a direct and material effect on the major federal program for the year ended September 30, 2021.

Report on Internal Control Over Compliance

Management of the Authority is responsible for establishing and maintaining effective internal control over compliance with the types of compliance requirements referred to above. In planning and performing our audit of compliance, we considered the Authority's internal control over compliance with the types of requirements that could have a direct and material effect on each major federal program to determine the auditing procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances for the purpose of expressing an opinion on compliance for each major federal program and to test and report on internal control over compliance in accordance with the Uniform Guidance, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of internal control over compliance. Accordingly, we do not express an opinion on the effectiveness of the Authority's internal control over compliance.

To the Board of Directors

Denton County Transportation Authority

A deficiency in internal control over compliance exists when the design or operation of a control over compliance does not allow management or employees, in the normal course of performing their assigned functions, to prevent, or detect and correct, noncompliance with a type of compliance requirement of a federal program on a timely basis. A material weakness in internal control over compliance is a deficiency, or a combination of deficiencies, in internal control over compliance such that there is a reasonable possibility that material noncompliance with a type of compliance requirement of a federal program will not be prevented, or detected and corrected, on a timely basis. A significant deficiency in internal control over compliance is a deficiency, or a combination of deficiencies, in internal control over compliance with a type of compliance requirement of a federal program that is less severe than a material weakness in internal control over compliance, yet important enough to merit attention by those charged with governance.

Our consideration of internal control over compliance was for the limited purpose described in the first paragraph of this section and was not designed to identify all deficiencies in internal control over compliance that might be material weaknesses or significant deficiencies. We did not identify any deficiencies in internal control over compliance that we consider to be material weaknesses. However, material weaknesses may exist that have not been identified.

The purpose of this report on internal control over compliance is solely to describe the scope of our testing of internal control over compliance and the results of that testing based on the requirements of the Uniform Guidance. Accordingly, this report is not suitable for any other purpose.

Plante & Moran, PLLC

February 9, 2022

Denton County Transportation Authority

Schedule of Expenditures of Federal Awards

Year Ended September 30, 2021

| Federal Agency/Pass-through Agency/Program Title | Assistance Listing Number | Pass-through Identifying Number | Total Amount Provided to Subrecipients | Federa | I Expenditures |
|--|---------------------------|------------------------------------|--|--------|----------------|
| Clusters: | | | | | |
| U.S. Department of Transportation - Direct Programs: | | | | | |
| Federal Transit Cluster: | | | | | |
| Federal Transit - Formula Grants (Urbanized Area Formula Program) |): | | | | |
| TX-95-X079-00 | 20.507 | | \$ - | \$ | 565,518 |
| TX-2017-011-00 | 20.507 | | - | | 587,974 |
| TX-2019-071-00 | 20.507 | | - | | 406,307 |
| TX-2020-048-00 | 20.507 | | _ | | 245.654 |
| COVID-19-TX-2020-095-00 | 20.507 | | _ | | 16,735,697 |
| TX-2020-124-00 | 20.507 | | _ | | 1,297,076 |
| TX-2020-151-00 | 20.507 | | - | | 176,970 |
| TX-2021-014-00 | 20.507 | | - | | 255,931 |
| TX-2021-088-00 | 20.507 | | - | | 441,642 |
| TX-2021-091-00 | 20.507 | | | | 158,042 |
| Total Formula Grants (Urbanized Area Formula Program) | | | - | | 20,870,811 |
| State of Good Repair Grants Program TX-2021-067-00 | 20.525 | | | | (1,120) |
| Total Federal Transit Cluster | | | - | | 20,869,691 |
| Passed through the North Central Texas Council of Governments - Transit Services Programs Cluster - Job Access and Reverse Commute Program TX-57-X043-01 | 20.516 | N/A | | | 99,778 |
| · | 20.510 | | | | |
| Total expenditures of federal awards | | | <u> </u> | \$ | 20,969,469 |

Denton County Transportation Authority

Notes to Schedule of Expenditures of Federal Awards

Year Ended September 30, 2021

Note 1 - Basis of Presentation

The accompanying schedule of expenditures of federal awards (the "Schedule") includes the federal grant activity of the Denton County Transportation Authority (the "Authority") under programs of the federal government for the year ended September 30, 2021. The information in the Schedule is presented in accordance with the requirements of Title 2 U.S. Code of Federal Regulations Part 200, *Uniform Administrative Requirements, Cost Principles, and Audit Requirements for Federal Awards* (the "Uniform Guidance"). Because the Schedule presents only a selected portion of the operations of the Authority, it is not intended to and does not present the financial position, changes in net position, or cash flows of the Authority.

Note 2 - Summary of Significant Accounting Policies

Expenditures reported in the Schedule are reported on the full accrual basis of accounting. Such expenditures are recognized following the cost principles contained in Title 2 U.S. Code of Federal Regulations Part 200, *Uniform Administrative Requirements, Cost Principles, and Audit Requirements for Federal Awards*, wherein certain types of expenditures are not allowable or are limited as to reimbursement. Negative amounts shown on the Schedule represent adjustments or credits made in the normal course of business to amounts reported as expenditures in prior years. The pass-through entity identifying numbers are presented where available.

The Authority has elected not to use the 10 percent *de minimis* indirect cost rate to recover indirect costs, as allowed under the Uniform Guidance.

Denton County Transportation Authority

Schedule of Findings and Questioned Costs

Year Ended September 30, 2021

Section I - Summary of Auditor's Results

None

| Financial Stateme | ents | | | | |
|-------------------------------------|---|-----------|-------|---|---------------|
| Type of auditor's re | port issued: | Unmodi | ified | | |
| Internal control ove | r financial reporting: | | | | |
| Material weakne | ess(es) identified? | | Yes | X | . No |
| | iency(ies) identified that are ed to be material weaknesses? | | _Yes | X | None reported |
| Noncompliance ma statements note | | | Yes | X | None reported |
| Federal Awards | | | | | |
| Internal control over | er major programs: | | | | |
| Material weakne | ess(es) identified? | | Yes | X | No |
| | iency(ies) identified that are ed to be material weaknesses? | | _Yes | X | None reported |
| | disclosed that are required to be reported in Section 2 CFR 200.516(a)? | | _Yes | X | No |
| Identification of ma | jor programs: | | | | |
| Assistance Listing Number | Name of Federal Program o | r Cluster | | | Opinion |
| 20.507, 20.525 | Federal Transit Cluster | | | | Unmodified |
| Dollar threshold us type A and type | ed to distinguish between B programs: | \$750,000 | | | |
| Auditee qualified as | s low-risk auditee? | X | Yes | | No |
| Section II - Fin | nancial Statement Audit Findings | | | | |
| Section III - Fe | ederal Program Audit Findings | | | | |



Plante & Moran, PLLC

Suite 360 4444 W. Bristol Road Flint, MI 48507 Tel: 810.767.5350 Fax: 810.767.8150 plantemoran.com

February 9, 2022

To the Board of Directors
Denton County Transportation Authority

We have audited the financial statements of the Denton County Transportation Authority (the "Authority") as of and for the year ended September 30, 2021 and have issued our report thereon dated February 9, 2022. Professional standards require that we provide you with the following information related to our audit, which is divided into the following sections:

Section I - Required Communications with Those Charged with Governance

Section II - Other Items

Section I includes information that current auditing standards require independent auditors to communicate to those individuals charged with governance. We will report this information annually to the members of the board of directors of the Authority.

Section II contains informational items that we believe will be of interest to you.

We would like to take this opportunity to thank the Authority's staff for the cooperation and courtesy extended to us during our audit. Their assistance and professionalism are invaluable.

This report is intended solely for the use of the members of the board of directors and management of the Authority and is not intended to be and should not be used by anyone other than these specified parties.

We welcome any questions you may have regarding the following communications, and we would be willing to discuss these or any other questions that you might have at your convenience.

Very truly yours,

Plante & Moran, PLLC

Pamela L. Hill

Keith Szymanski

Keith Szymanski

Section I - Required Communications with Those Charged with Governance

Our Responsibility Under U.S. Generally Accepted Auditing Standards

As stated in our engagement letter dated November 4, 2021, our responsibility, as described by professional standards, is to express an opinion about whether the financial statements prepared by management with your oversight are fairly presented, in all material respects, in conformity with U.S. generally accepted accounting principles. Our audit of the financial statements does not relieve you or management of your responsibilities. Our responsibility is to plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable, but not absolute, assurance that the financial statements are free of material misstatement.

As part of our audit, we considered the internal control of the Authority. Such considerations were solely for the purpose of determining our audit procedures and not to provide any assurance concerning such internal control.

We are responsible for communicating significant matters related to the audit that are, in our professional judgment, relevant to your responsibilities in overseeing the financial reporting process. However, we are not required to design procedures specifically to identify such matters.

Our audit of the Authority's financial statements has also been conducted in accordance with *Government Auditing Standards*, issued by the Comptroller General of the United States. Under *Government Auditing Standards*, we are obligated to communicate certain matters that come to our attention related to our audit to those responsible for the governance of the Authority, including compliance with certain provisions of laws, regulations, contracts, and grant agreements; certain instances of error or fraud; illegal acts applicable to government agencies; and significant deficiencies in internal control that we identify during our audit. Toward this end, we issued a separate letter dated February 9, 2022 regarding our consideration of the Authority's internal control over financial reporting and on our tests of its compliance with certain provisions of laws, regulations, contracts, and grant agreements.

Planned Scope and Timing of the Audit

We performed the audit according to the planned scope and timing previously communicated to you in our meeting about planning matters on July 22, 2021.

Significant Audit Findings

Qualitative Aspects of Accounting Practices

Management is responsible for the selection and use of appropriate accounting policies. In accordance with the terms of our engagement letter, we will advise management about the appropriateness of accounting policies and their application. The significant accounting policies used by the Authority are described in Note 1 to the financial statements.

As described in Note 1 to the financial statements, the Authority made a reporting change to combine the North Texas Mobility Corporation with the Authority's operations.

We noted no transactions entered into by the Authority during the year for which there is a lack of authoritative guidance or consensus.

We noted no significant transactions that have been recognized in the financial statements in a different period than when the transaction occurred.

Accounting estimates are an integral part of the financial statements prepared by management and are based on management's knowledge and experience about past and current events and assumptions about future events. Certain accounting estimates are particularly sensitive because of their significance to the financial statements and because of the possibility that future events affecting them may differ significantly from those expected. There were no significant balances, amounts, or disclosures in the financial statements based on sensitive management estimates.

The disclosures in the financial statements are neutral, consistent, and clear.

Section I - Required Communications with Those Charged with Governance (Continued)

Difficulties Encountered in Performing the Audit

We encountered no difficulties in performing and completing our audit.

Disagreements with Management

For the purpose of this letter, professional standards define a disagreement with management as a financial accounting, reporting, or auditing matter, whether or not resolved to our satisfaction, that could be significant to the financial statements or the auditor's report. We are pleased to report that no such disagreements arose during the course of our audit.

Corrected and Uncorrected Misstatements

Professional standards require us to accumulate all known and likely misstatements identified during the audit, other than those that are trivial, and communicate them to the appropriate level of management. Management has corrected all such misstatements.

Significant Findings or Issues

We generally discuss a variety of matters, including the application of accounting principles and auditing standards, business conditions affecting the Authority, and business plans and strategies that may affect the risks of material misstatement, with management each year prior to our retention as the Authority's auditors. However, these discussions occurred in the normal course of our professional relationship, and our responses were not a condition of our retention.

Management Representations

We have requested certain representations from management that are included in the management representation letter dated February 9, 2022.

Management Consultations with Other Independent Accountants

In some cases, management may decide to consult with other accountants about auditing and accounting matters, similar to obtaining a second opinion on certain situations. If a consultation involves application of an accounting principle to the Authority's financial statements or a determination of the type of auditor's opinion that may be expressed on those statements, our professional standards require the consulting accountant to check with us to determine that the consultant has all the relevant facts. To our knowledge, there were no such consultations with other accountants.

Other Information Included in Annual Reports

Our responsibility for other information included in annual reports does not extend beyond the financial statements, and we do not express an opinion or any form of assurance on the other information. However, we read the introductory and statistical section of the financial statements, and nothing came to our attention that caused us to believe that such information, or its manner of presentation, is materially misstated or materially inconsistent with the information or manner of its presentation appearing in the financial statements.

Section II - Other Items

COVID-19 Resource Center and ARPA

Throughout the COVID-19 pandemic, Plante & Moran, PLLC's COVID-19 task force of leaders across the firm has monitored, addressed, and provided insight related to the virus and the unique challenges our local governments have faced while continuing to provide essential services to their communities through our COVID-19 resource center at https://www.plantemoran.com/explore-our-thinking/areas-of-focus/covid-19-government-resource-center. This will continue as our nation emerges from this crisis.

In March 2021, the president signed the American Rescue Plan Act (ARPA) into law, which included \$30.5 billion in federal funding to support public transportation systems. The ARPA award terms provide that payments from the Fiscal Recovery Funds as a general matter will be subject to the provision of Title 2 U.S. Code of Federal Regulations Part 200, *Uniform Administrative Requirements, Cost Principles, and Audit Requirements for Federal Awards* (the "Uniform Guidance"), including the cost principles and restrictions on general provisions for selected items of cost. The Authority will need to understand these reforms and may be required to evaluate, document, and monitor internal procedures around compliance, including maintaining certain required policies.

The COVID-19 resource center is being continuously updated for the latest guidance and strategy related to ARPA and will help keep the Authority running smoothly through our nation's recovery.

Want to receive relevant content directly to your email? Subscribe at https://www.plantemoran.com/subscribe where you can customize your subscription preferences based on your specific interests and industry selection.

Auditor Reporting Standards

The AICPA Auditing Standards Board (ASB) issued several new standards that will be effective shortly, which will significantly change the independent auditor's report and make some changes to certain required audit procedures. The standards discussed below are both first effective for your fiscal year ending September 30, 2022.

Statement on Auditing Standards No. 137 addresses auditors' responsibilities relating to other information included in annual reports. This new standard may increase the scope of audit procedures and may result in some audit work being performed outside of the normal timing. To the extent that the Authority issues a document meeting the AICPA's definition of an annual report under the standard, additional audit procedures will need to be performed on that separate document before it is issued.

Statement on Auditing Standards No. 134 requires changes in the form and content of the auditor's report issued as a result of an audit of financial statements in order to provide financial statement users with more meaningful information about the audit process and meaning of auditor opinions. This is the first significant change to auditors' reports in years.

Significant elements of the new standard include:

- Revision of order for elements of the opinion letter, including moving the auditor's opinion to the top of the letter
- Expansion of information to be included within a basis of opinion section and notification to the user that the auditor is required to be independent of the entity and meet other ethical responsibilities
- Explanation of how misstatements to financial statements are determined to be material
- Addition of definition of reasonable assurance and identifying that the risk of material misstatement due to fraud is greater than the risk due to error

Section II - Other Items (Continued)

- Enhanced reporting related to going concern, including a description of management's responsibilities when required by the applicable reporting framework
- Description of the auditor's responsibilities, including responsibilities relating to professional judgment
 and professional skepticism, internal controls, identification of risks of material misstatement to the
 financial statements, evaluation of accounting policies used, conclusion on the entity's ability to
 continue as a going concern, and the auditor's communications with those charged with governance

We are happy to discuss these changes with you so that you are well prepared.

Cybersecurity

Cyberattacks are on the rise across the globe, and the cost of these attacks is ever increasing. Because of these attacks, governmental entities stand to lose their reputation, the ability to operate efficiently, and proprietary information or assets. They potentially can also be subject to financial and legal liabilities. Managing this issue is especially challenging because even a government with a highly mature cybersecurity risk management program still has a residual risk that a material cybersecurity breach could occur and not be detected in a timely manner.

Recognizing the risk of cyberattacks, the Department of Homeland Security recently announced that TSA will impose cybersecurity mandates on certain rail transit systems and railroads. It will be recommended that public transit agencies not covered by the directive adopt certain measures, including developing and implementing contingency/response plans for cyberattacks and conducting self-assessments to benchmark cybersecurity posture.

We understand that the technology department continues to monitor and evaluate this risk, which are critical best practices. Additionally, periodic assessments of the system in order to verify that the control environment is working as intended are key parts of measuring associated business risk. We encourage administration and those charged with governance to work with the technology team on this very important topic. If we can be of assistance in the process, we would be happy to do so.

Upcoming Accounting Standard Requiring Preparation - GASB Statement No. 87 - Leases

This new accounting pronouncement will be effective for the Authority's 2022 fiscal year. This statement requires recognition of certain lease assets and liabilities for leases that previously were classified as operating leases and recognized as inflows of resources or outflows of resources based on the payment provisions of the contract. It establishes a single model for lease accounting based on the foundational principle that leases are financings of the right to use an underlying asset. Under this statement, a lessee is required to recognize a lease liability and an intangible right-to-use lease asset, and a lessor is required to recognize a lease receivable and a deferred inflow of resources.

We recommend beginning to accumulate information now related to all significant lease agreements in order to more efficiently implement this new standard once it becomes effective.

Plante & Moran, PLLC has been providing trainings and other resources to help prepare for the implementation of this new standard. Please reach out to your engagement team for assistance in getting started.



Board of Directors Memo

February 24, 2022

SUBJECT: Mobility Services Update

Recommendation

No Board action required at this time. This is an informational update.

Background

This report on Mobility Services will serve as an update on the following topics:

- GoZone statistics
- Related GoZone service performance information and other updates
- Status update on March 2022 service changes

Previous Board Activity & Action

- June 25, 2020 Regular Agenda Item 3 Mobility as a Service (MaaS) Task Order for Member City Services
- **July 31, 2020** Specially Called Board Meeting Transformation Initiative Workshop Discussed as part of the future planning process
- August 27, 2020 Regular Agenda Item 8 Discuss MaaS Task Order #2: On-Demand Service in Member Cities
- **September 24, 2020** Regular Agenda Item 8 Consider Approval of MaaS Task Order #2: On-Demand Services for Member Cities and Contracted Cities
- November 12, 2020 Regular Agenda Item 1 Discuss Transformation Initiative Progress Report –
 Initial introduction of the Agency Priority Actions flowchart which included plans and estimated dates
 for the MaaS service plan
- December 10, 2020 Regular Agenda Item 6 Discuss DCTA Priority Actions
- January 28, 2021
 - o Regular Agenda Item 5 Approval and Award of Mobility as a Service Contract
 - Joint Info Item 1 DCTA Agency Priorities Update (memo and flowchart)
- March 10, 2021 Regular Agenda Item 7 Review and Discuss MaaS Service Plan Update and Considerations
- April 7, 2021
 - Regular Agenda Item 1 Presentation, Discussion and Approval of Via's Proposal #4
 - Regular Agenda Item 2 Presentation and Discussion of Task Order with Via
- May 27, 2021 Regular Agenda Item 7 Public Involvement Progress Report



- June 24, 2021 Regular Agenda Item 7 Discuss GoZone Public Involvement Feedback and Potential Service Modifications to Proposed Plan
- **July 22, 2021** Regular Agenda Item 4 Discuss and Consider Approval of GoZone Service Plan for Launch on September 7, 2021
- August 26, 2021 Regular Agenda Item 6 Update and Discussion of the September 7, 2021 GoZone Launch and Fixed Route Services
- September 23, 2021 Regular Agenda Item 3 Update on Mobility Services, GoZone and Fixed Route
- October 28, 2021 Regular Agenda Item 6 Provide a Report on GoZone Service Performance
- **December 2, 2021** Regular Agenda Item 5 GoZone Update
- January 27, 2022 Regular Agenda Item 6 GoZone Update

Financial Impact

N/A

Exhibits

N/A

Submitted By:

avier Trilla, AVP of Innovation and Information Technology



Board of Directors Memo

February 24, 2022

SUBJECT: Discuss and Consider Authorizing the CEO to Negotiate and Enter into an Agreement with River North Transit LLC (Via) for Comprehensive Operations Analysis Services

Recommendation

Staff recommends the Board of Directors authorize the CEO to negotiate and enter into an agreement with Via to provide consulting services for a Comprehensive Operations Analysis.

Background

Modifications to the Connect Fixed Route service were recommended and approved during the December 2021 board meeting. In addition, a comprehensive operations analysis was recommended for presentation at the June 2022 board meeting.

In coordination with Accenture, Via will provide consulting services for a multimodal and intermodal solution that include the following tasks:

- Define Technology Options and Timeline
- Existing Conditions Analysis
- Develop and Assess Service Alternatives
- Refine Service Alternatives
- Cost-Benefit Analysis
- Develop Initial and Final Recommendations for the Board
- Implementation

Previous Board Activity & Action

• December 2, 2021 – Regular Agenda Item 3 - Reconsider Changes Made to Connect Fixed Route Service Effective December 5, 2021 and Proposed Recommendations

Financial Impact

The value of the task order will be \$75,000, billed at a rate of \$15,000 per month over the course of 5 months of work. Realized savings in the FY22 budget will be used to fund this task order.

Exhibits

Exhibit 1: DCTA - DCTA_Via_Consulting_Agreement

Submitted By:

Javier Trilla, AVP of Innovation and Information Technology

Consulting Services Agreement (DRAFT)

This Consulting Services Agreement (this "Agreement"), dated as of [DATE] (the "Effective Date"), is by and between Via Mobility LLC, a Delaware limited liability company, with offices located at 160 Varick St, New York, New York 10013 ("Via") and the Denton County Transportation Authority ("DCTA"), a Texas Metropolitan Transit Authority, with offices located at 1955 Lakeway Drive, Suite 260, Lewisville, Texas 75057 ("Client" and together with Via, the "Parties", and each a "Party").

1. Background and Purpose.

- 1.1 <u>Via Background</u>. Via is the developer and owner of a proprietary technology platform and certain related systems and methods used to plan, establish, monitor, operate and/or manage on-demand transit networks. Via carries out planning and advisory projects for clients around the world, using various systems, technologies, methodologies and simulation tools (collectively, the "**Via Consulting Tools**"). Via also employs an internal use version of its proprietary platform, systems and methods to operate its own on-demand transit service under the Via brand, and has also developed a cloud-based version of its platform and related systems and methods (collectively, the "**Via Solution**") and accompanying technical and operational support services that it makes available by subscription on a software as a services basis to third party operators of private and public transportation networks.
- 1.2 <u>Client Background</u>. Client operates a public transportation network (the "Client Transportation Service") using vehicles, equipment and services (including telecommunications and/or dispatch equipment and services), personnel, routes and other infrastructure it owns or otherwise controls.
- 1.3 <u>Purpose; Ordering</u>. The purpose of this Agreement is to provide a framework under which Via will provide to Client certain transportation consulting services (collectively, the "Services"). This Agreement shall govern the provision of Services by Via to Client as described in the statement of work attached hereto and any other statement of work signed by Via and Client (each, a "Statement of Work").
- 2. The Services. Pursuant to one or more Statements of Work, the parties intend that Via shall provide the Services described in such Statement of Work. The initial accepted Statement of Work is attached hereto as Exhibit A. Additional Statements of Work shall be deemed issued and accepted only if signed by the Via Contract Manager and the Client Contract Manager, appointed pursuant to Section 3.1(a) and Section 4.1, respectively. Each Statement of Work may be amended through written agreement between Via and the Client from time to time during the Term. Unless a Statement of Work has different acceptance terms, Client will accept the Services and any resulting deliverables upon payment or fifteen (15) days after their performance, whichever occurs first, and may not withhold, condition, or delay payment or acceptance after that time.

3. **Via Obligations**. Via shall:

- 3.1 Designate employees or contractors that it determines, in its sole discretion, to be capable of filling the following positions:
 - (a) A primary contact to act as its authorized representative with respect to all matters pertaining to this Agreement (the "Via Contract Manager").
 - (b) A number of employees or contractors that it deems sufficient to perform the Services set out in each Statement of Work (collectively, with the Via Contract Manager, "Via Representatives").
- 3.2 Assign only qualified, legally authorized Via Representatives to provide the Services.
- 3.3 Comply with all Applicable Laws and regulations in providing the Services, where "**Applicable Laws**" means (i) any statute, statutory instrument or any other legislative instrument having the force of law; and (ii) any applicable judgment of a relevant court of law which is a binding precedent, in each case in force at any time during the Term.
- 3.4 Maintain complete and accurate records relating to the provision of the Services under this Agreement, including records of the time spent and materials used by Via in providing the Services. During the Term, upon Client's written request, Via shall allow Client or Client's representative to inspect and make copies of such records in connection with the provision of the Services; provided that: (i) Client provides Via with at least 15 business days advance written notice of the planned inspection, (ii) any such inspection shall take place during regular business hours, and (iii) any such inspection shall occur no more than once per year.

4. Client Obligations. Client shall:

- 4.1 Designate one of its employees or agents to serve as its primary contact with respect to this Agreement and to act as its authorized representative with respect to matters pertaining to this Agreement (the "Client Contract Manager"), with such designation to remain in force unless and until a successor Client Contract Manager is appointed.
- 4.2 Cooperate with Via in its performance of the Services and provide access to Client's premises, information, personnel, and/or systems as required to enable Via to provide the Services. Via shall not be responsible for any failures or delays caused by the Client's failure to so cooperate or any inaccurate information provided by or on behalf of the Client.
- 4.3 Take all steps necessary, including obtaining any required licenses or consents, to prevent Client-caused delays in Via's provision of the Services.

5. Fees and Expenses.

5.1 In consideration of the provision of the Services by Via and the rights granted to Client under this Agreement, Client shall pay the fees set out in Via's then current Statement of Work. Payment to Via of such fees and the reimbursement of expenses pursuant to this Section 5 shall constitute payment in full for the performance of the Services. Unless

otherwise provided in the applicable Statement of Work, said fee will be payable within 30 days of receipt by the Client of an invoice from Via but in no event more than 30 days after completion of the Services performed pursuant to the applicable Statement of Work.

- 5.2 Client shall reimburse Via for all reasonable expenses incurred in accordance with the Statement of Work, within 30 days of receipt by the Client of an invoice from Via accompanied by receipts and reasonable supporting documentation.
- 5.3 Fees do not include applicable taxes (including sales, use, value-added, or excise taxes) or government charges all of which are payable by Client (excluding taxes on Via's income), nor do they include expenses Via may incur for Client's direct benefit, which will be incurred in accordance with Client's applicable expense-reimbursement policies, if so requested. Sales or value-added taxes or similar governmental charges associated with the provision of any Services (excluding taxes on Via's income) will be separately stated on the relevant invoice and shall be paid by Client in accordance with this Section 5.
- 5.4 If Via does not receive timely payment, Via may charge the maximum monthly interest allowed by law or one percent, whichever is greater, suspend Via's performance and seek cost of collection, including reasonable attorneys' fees. If Client disputes invoiced amounts, Client must submit disputes to Via in writing within ten (10) business days of the date the invoice originally was due, otherwise it will be final and non-refundable.
- **6.** <u>Indemnification.</u> Each Party shall indemnify, defend, and hold harmless the other Party and its officers, directors, employees, agents, affiliates, successors, and permitted assigns (collectively, "Indemnified Party") against any and all losses, damages, liabilities, deficiencies, claims, actions, judgments, settlements, interest, awards, penalties, fines, or costs, including reasonable attorneys' fees, awarded against Indemnified Party in a final judgment (collectively, "Losses"), relating to any claim of a third party arising out of or occurring in connection with the other Party's gross negligence or willful misconduct in the performance of this Agreement.

7. Warranties; Limitation of Liability; Insurance.

- 7.1 Warranties. Via warrants that: (a) from the Effective Date until the expiry or termination of this Agreement, the Services will comply in all material respects with this Agreement and with the relevant Statement of Work; (b) the Services will be carried out in a competent and professional manner; and (c) it has, and shall continue to have, all rights, consents and authorizations necessary to enable it to perform the Services in accordance with the provisions of this Agreement. In the event the Services fail to perform as warranted in this Section 7.1, Via shall use commercially reasonable to promptly correct any such failure of the Services.
- 7.2 <u>Disclaimers</u>. WITHOUT PREJUDICE TO SECTION 7.1 AND TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY LAW: (a) EACH PARTY EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES, WHETHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED, OR STATUTORY (INCLUDING WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR PURPOSE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT); AND (b) VIA DOES NOT WARRANT THAT THE

SERVICES MEET CLIENT'S REQUIREMENTS, OR ARE ERROR FREE. Notwithstanding anything to the contrary express or implied in this Section 7, Section 6 or elsewhere in this Agreement, Via shall have no liability to Client or any passenger (including no duty to defend, indemnify or hold Client harmless) for any actions taken by Client as a result of with Service Provider's analysis, reports and/or other recommendations. In addition, Via shall have no liability to Client or any passenger for any Transport Incident where "Transport Incident" means any accident, incident or other situation involving any passenger (including negligent, willful and/or criminal acts and omissions), device, vehicle or equipment employed by Client in the use, provision or servicing of the Client Transportation Service and/or any employee or agent of Client operating such vehicle, device or equipment or otherwise acting on behalf of Client. Transport Incidents include actual or alleged violations of Applicable Laws and specifically any applicable law to which operators and owners of vehicles, employer of vehicle operators, and transportation service providers are required to adhere.

- 7.3 Limits on and Exclusions from Liability. NEITHER PARTY WILL BE LIABLE FOR ANY INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, RELIANCE, OR PUNITIVE DAMAGES OR LOST OR IMPUTED PROFITS OR LOST DATA EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. OTHER THAN WITH RESPECT TO FEES PAID OR PAYABLE BY CLIENT UNDER THE AGREEMENTS, EACH PARTY'S TOTAL LIABILITY FOR ALL CLAIMS ARISING IN CONNECTION WITH ALL AGREEMENTS WILL BE LIMITED TO DIRECT DAMAGES IN AN AMOUNT EQUIVALENT TO THE FEES PAID OR PAYABLE TO VIA WITH RESPECT TO THE PARTICULAR SERVICES, AS APPLICABLE, UNDER THE STATEMENT OF WORK OUT OF WHICH THE CLAIM AROSE DURING THE SIX (6) MONTHS IMMEDIATELY PRECEDING ASSERTION OF THE CLAIM. Client must bring all claims and causes of action within six (6) months of their being discovered or one (1) year after expiration or termination of the Statement of Work out of which the claim arises, whichever occurs first. The limitations and exclusions in this Section 7.3 apply to all claims or causes of action under whatever theory brought and regardless of whether a Party was advised of the possibility of the claim.
- 7.4 <u>Insurance</u>. Via shall obtain and maintain during the Term, with financially sound and reputable insurers having A.M. Best ratings of at least B (III) or better, policies of insurance customary for the delivery of technology and services similar to the Services including commercial general liability, auto liability (covering only Via's employees and not Client, passengers or the vehicles used in the Client Transportation Service) and professional liability. All such insurance shall be primary and not contributing with any insurance coverage maintained by Client. Client will receive advance written notice in the event of a cancellation or material change in any Via insurance policy hereunder. Where permissible, (e.g., policies other than professional liability), Via will name Client as an additional insured. Client shall obtain and maintain at all times any insurance necessary or statutorily required to operate the Client Transportation Service using the Via Solution in the jurisdiction(s) in which it operates, at its sole cost and expense.
- 8. <u>Intellectual Property</u>. Client shall own all intellectual property rights ("Intellectual Property Rights") in and to all reports that are delivered to Client under this Agreement

(collectively, the "**Deliverables**"). Client hereby grants Via a license to use all Intellectual Property Rights in the Deliverables free of charge and on a non-exclusive, worldwide, non-transferable, non-sublicensable, fully paid-up, royalty-free and perpetual basis. Notwithstanding the foregoing, Via shall own all Intellectual Property Rights in and to the Via Consulting Tools, the Via Solution, and to any pre-existing intellectual property or tools not developed specifically for Client ("Via's IP"). Client acknowledges and agrees that it shall have no right to use, reproduce, distribute, sublicense, modify or otherwise provide to third parties, Via's IP, in whole or in part, except as explicitly granted herein. In the event that Via provides Client with any hard-copy or electronic copies of materials containing Via's Confidential Information, including information pertaining to Via's IP and its operation, and Client retains copies of such materials in accordance with its general procurement rules following the termination of this Agreement, Client acknowledges that all Intellectual Property Rights relating to Via's IP and all of their derivative works and improvements remain the sole property of Via.

9. <u>Independent Activities.</u> The Client acknowledges that Via is in the business of performing services similar to the Services for third parties and that, subject to its confidentiality obligations hereunder, nothing herein prevents Via from continuing to engage in the performance of such services and related independent activities.

10. <u>Confidentiality</u>.

10.1 Non-Disclosure Obligations. Confidential Information may be provided or disclosed by one Party (the "Disclosing Party") orally, in writing or in graphical, machinereadable or other form to the other Party (the "Receiving Party"). The Receiving Party shall hold the Confidential Information in confidence and shall not make any use or disclosure of the Confidential Information to any individual or entity during the Term and thereafter without the express written consent of the Disclosing Party in each instance, except to the extent that those of the Receiving Party's employees, service providers, legal and financial advisors, and individual independent contractors who are bound to substantially similar obligations of confidentiality as set forth herein and have a need to know the Confidential Information so disclosed. The Receiving Party shall handle all Confidential Information received with the same degree of care as it uses to maintain the confidentiality of its own confidential information, which shall in no event be less than reasonable care. As between the parties, all Confidential Information shall remain the sole and exclusive property of the Disclosing Party and other than the licenses expressly granted in this Agreement or another agreement between the parties, no disclosure or permitted use of the Confidential Information under this Agreement shall be construed as the grant of any right, title or interest, by license or otherwise, in or to the Confidential Information. The remedy at law for breach or threatened breach of this Section 10.1 shall be inadequate, and in addition to any other remedy available, the nonbreaching party shall be entitled to seek injunctive relief. In the event that Client receives a request for Via's Confidential Information, including this Agreement and the terms and conditions contained herein, under the Freedom of Information Act ("FOIA") or its state or local analogs, Client agrees to provide Via timely notice of such a request and to assist Via in seeking to protect its Confidential Information under any applicable exemption for trade secrets, to the extent possible under Applicable Law.

10.2Exclusions. The Receiving Party shall have no obligation under Section 10.1 with respect to any Confidential Information disclosed to it which: (i) the Receiving Party can demonstrate was already known to it at the time of its receipt hereunder; (ii) is or becomes generally available to the public other than by means of breach of these Terms and Conditions or any other agreement any Party may have with the Disclosing Party; (iii) is independently obtained from a third party (other than any authorized recipient) whose disclosure to the Receiving Party does not violate a duty of confidentiality and does not require further restrictions on such disclosure; or (iv) is independently developed by or on behalf of the Receiving Party without use of, reference to or reliance on any Confidential Information of the Disclosing Party, and such independent development can be reasonably evidenced by the Receiving Party. In addition, the Receiving Party may make disclosure of Confidential Information in a judicial, legislative, or administrative investigation or proceeding or to a government or other regulatory agency; provided that, to the extent permitted by, and practicable under, the circumstances, the Receiving Party shall provide to Disclosing Party prior written notice of the intended disclosure to enable the Disclosing Party the reasonable opportunity to contest or limit such disclosure or, if prior written notice is not permitted or practicable under the circumstances, prompt notice of such disclosure.

11. <u>Term and Termination</u>.

- 11.1 Term; Duration of Right to Place Statements of Work. The Client's right to enter into Statements of Work under this Agreement commences on the Effective Date and continues, unless earlier terminated pursuant to this Section 11, for so long as at least one Statement of Work remains continuously in effect (the "Term").
- 11.2 Termination. If an obligation under this Agreement or a Statement of Work is materially breached, the non-breaching Party may provide written notice specifying the nature of the breach and the breaching Party will have thirty (30) days from receipt of notice to cure. If not so cured, the non-breaching Party may terminate the applicable Statement of Work affected by the breach by providing a second written notice of immediate termination. In addition, all Statements of Work, including all Services under them, shall terminate automatically and immediately upon either Party's insolvency or any attempt by either Party to obtain protection from creditors or wind down operations, unless otherwise agreed by the opposing Party in a written notice. If a Statement of Work is terminated by either Party or expires pursuant to its terms, then Client must pay any outstanding amounts due to Via, and all copies and embodiments of Via's Confidential Information (including the Applications) must be returned. Unless an Agreement is terminated by Client under this Section 11 as a result of Via's uncured material breach, no expiration or termination of this Agreement will affect Client's obligation to pay for Via's non-cancelable obligations to third parties on behalf of or benefitting Client, including fees in respect of Third Party Content, all of which will remain due and payable by Client in accordance with the terms of the applicable Statement of Work. The notification by either Party of its intent to terminate this Agreement and/or any Statements of Work does not relieve either Party of any obligations that have accrued on or before the date on which termination becomes effective.
- 12. <u>Assignment</u>. Neither Party may assign, transfer, delegate or subcontract any of its rights or delegate any of its obligations under this Agreement or any Statement of Work without the

prior written consent of the other Party, provided that such consent is not required for an assignment to a Party's Affiliate. Any purported assignment or delegation in violation of this Section 12 shall be null and void. Via may require Client and the proposed assignee/transferee to agree to additional terms or pay additional fees.

- 13. Dispute Resolution; Governing Law. The laws of the State of New York will govern this Agreement without regard to the principles of conflicts of laws. Except for either Party's right, in connection with any matter involving this Agreement, to seek equitable or declaratory relief in any court of competent jurisdiction, all disputes not resolved informally by the parties shall be submitted for arbitration before a panel of three (3) arbitrators selected one each by the parties and one by the American Arbitration Association (the "AAA"), at least one of whom shall be an expert in the field of cloud-deployed software solutions. The arbitration shall be conducted in accordance with the provisions contained herein and in accordance with the Commercial Arbitration Rules of the AAA in effect at the time of the arbitration. A written notice of intent to arbitrate shall be provided by one Party to the other Party within a reasonable time after the dispute has arisen, and in no event shall such notice be provided after the date when institution of legal or equitable proceedings based on such dispute would be barred by the applicable statute of limitations. All arbitration shall be administered by the AAA and shall take place in New York, New York unless otherwise agreed to by the parties. All aspects of the arbitration including the result shall be treated as confidential and shall not be disclosed. The award of the arbitrators shall be binding and judgment upon the award rendered by the arbitrators may be entered in any court having jurisdiction; provided, however, that the arbitrators shall not have the power to award: (a) punitive damages; or (b) damages in excess of the limitations set forth in Section 7 hereof.
- **14.** Entire Agreement. This Agreement, including and together with any related Statements of Work, exhibits, schedules, attachments and appendices, constitutes the sole and entire agreement of the Parties with respect to the subject matter contained herein, and supersedes all prior and contemporaneous understandings, agreements, representations and warranties, both written and oral, regarding such subject matter. Conflicts between the terms and conditions of this Agreement and the terms and conditions of any Statement of Work with respect to amounts or timing of payments will be resolved in favor of the Statement of Work. All other conflicts will be resolved in favor of this Agreement, including in the event of a conflict with Client's general conditions.
- 15. Miscellaneous. These Terms and Conditions and each Statement of Work may be signed in separate counterparts deemed to be one instrument. The parties agree and acknowledge that signatures transmitted electronically, whether sent via facsimile or as attached files to electronic mail messages (e.g., in .pdf format), shall be acceptable to bind the parties. All notices must be sent by certified mail or overnight courier to the address specified for each Party and deemed given three (3) business days after sending. The prevailing Party in any dispute is entitled to the recovery of reasonable legal fees and expenses. Failures in performance beyond a Party's reasonable control are excused. Unenforceable provisions will be reformed to permit enforceability with maximum effect to the original intent. Waiver of a breach is not waiver of other or later breaches. No waiver by any Party of any of the provisions of this Agreement shall be effective unless explicitly set forth in writing and signed by the Party so waiving. Nothing in an Agreement is intended to create an agency, partnership, joint

venture, or franchise between the parties and except as may be expressly stated in a Statement of Work, neither Party has the authority to act in the name or on behalf of or otherwise to bind the other. In performing its obligations under this Agreement, each Party is acting as an independent contractor of the other and is solely responsible for the supervision, daily direction, and control of its own employees and for the payment of their salaries and benefits and related compensation. Via may issue a press release or make other public announcements concerning this Agreement and/or Statements of Work and may use Client's Marks in its marketing materials and on its website in a manner consistent with Client's communications policies (to the extent made available to Via) but in all events reasonably, where "Marks" means any word, name, symbol, logo, font, or device or any combination thereof, used to identify and distinguish goods or services from another source, including trademarks (both registered and unregistered), domain names and trade dress. Client shall, upon Via's request, use commercially reasonable efforts to provide comments with respect to the collaboration hereunder that Via can quote in its press release. Except as expressly set forth herein, there no other third-party beneficiaries of this Agreement. No amendment to or modification of this Agreement is effective unless it is in writing, identified as an amendment to this Agreement and signed by each Party.

[SIGNATURE PAGE FOLLOWS]

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the parties hereto have caused this Agreement to be executed as of the Effective Date by their respective duly authorized officers.

| AUTHORITY AUTHORITY |
|----------------------|
| By |
| Name: |
| Title: |
| VIA MOBILITY LLC |
| By |
| Name: |
| Title: |

EXHIBITS

EXHIBIT A

INITIAL STATEMENT OF WORK

<u>Task 1: Define Technology Options and Timeline</u> The Via team will articulate the multimodal and intermodal features that are available for deployment both in the GoZone service and across DCTA's offerings, as well as the cost and timeline for introducing each of them.

<u>Task 2: Existing Conditions Analysis</u> Leveraging Remix and other tools, the Via team will conduct a spatial analysis of transit need and demand in the DCTA service area. We will analyze the performance of the existing fixed-route and on-demand transit network to understand how well the entire network, as well as individual routes and zones, are serving this demand. This will include the development of route profiles.

<u>Task 3: Develop and Assess Service Alternatives</u> Drawing on the existing conditions analysis and engagement with the DCTA team, Via will develop a series of alternative network scenarios involving various degrees of reduction in fixed-route service; adjustments to existing routes; and adjustments to GoZone service zone boundaries, business rules, and service parameters. Via will use Remix to model the vehicle-hour requirements associated with adjustments to fixed-route service and our proprietary agent-based simulation tool to assess adjustments to GoZone services. These alternatives will incorporate the multimodal and/or intermodal features described in Task 1.

<u>Task 4: Refine Service Alternatives</u> The Via team will review the analysis conducted in Task 3 to reflect any new developments in ridership and utilization of existing services that may be reflected in the April service data prepared by Accenture.

<u>Task 5: Cost-Benefit Analysis</u> The Via team will develop a matrix assessing the overall cost, and projected cost-per-trip, for the various fixed-route and on-demand service alternatives under consideration against their impact on ridership, network coverage, and access to opportunity for vulnerable groups.

<u>Task 6: Develop Initial and Final Recommendations for the Board</u> Drawing on work conducted in the preceding tasks, Via will work with Accenture and the DCTA team to propose a multimodal service plan and pricing strategy. Via will support DCTA staff in presenting these recommendations to the DCTA Board of Directors and will revise and refine recommendations based on the Board's feedback.

<u>Task 7: Implementation</u> The Via team will prepare a detailed implementation strategy for the service alternatives approved by the Board including fleet and driver acquisition and management, rider education and marketing, etc.

<u>Budget and Schedule</u> Via will work closely with Accenture and the DCTA staff to execute the scope described above over the course of approximately five months, with all work concluding by the end of July. We propose a fee of \$75,000 to be billed at a monthly rate of \$15,000 over five months.



Board of Directors Memo

February 24, 2022

SUBJECT: Consider Approval of Resolution R22-02 Approving Budget Revision 2022-07

Recommendation

Staff recommends the Board of Directors approve Resolution R22-02 authorizing a budget revision for the FY2022 operating and capital budget.

Background

The DCTA budget is prepared months in advance of the start of the October 1 fiscal year and not all revenues and expenses can be anticipated at the time of the budget preparation. Therefore, during the fiscal year, it may become necessary to reforecast the annual revenues and expenses and modify the budget by amendment. Amending the budget for material changes will provide a better forecasting and management tool for the Board and DCTA staff.

Previous Board Activity & Action

The FY22 budget was originally adopted on September 23, 2021. This is the seventh budget revision related to the FY22 budget.

Identified Need

In order to improve financial reporting and communicate expected financial results, the revised budget is submitted to the Board for consideration and approval of the attached Budget Revision 2022-07. DCTA's Financial Management Policies require approval of a Board resolution to authorize a budget amendment that increases the total adopted fiscal year budget or moves funds between DCTA and North Texas Mobility Corporation.

Items included in this revision are as follows:

Via Customer Support:

- The proposed monthly fee for Via to provide GoZone customer support is \$35k for an increase of \$245k (\$35k x 7 months). This is offset by a credit of \$2,800 for the existing monthly fee that was included in Amendment #2, for a total budget impact of \$242,200 in purchased transportation services for FY22.
- The annualized support cost is \$420k and includes phone and E-mail support for all GoZone service hours.
- Task Order was presented to the Board in January and has been included on the February agenda for Board approval.

Joint Rail Operations Facility Project:

- The Board approved the receipt of DART design funds and execution of task orders with Jacobs Engineering for design of the Joint Rail Operations Facility (JROF) expansion of the DCTA Rail Operations & Maintenance Facility (ROMF).
- Budget Revision 2022-07 includes the \$1,027,200 for the receipt of funds from DART as well as the creation of the capital project expenditure for the same amount.
- This capital project will be fully funded by DART so there is no net position impact for DCTA.



Financial Impact

The total budget impact of Budget Revision 2022-07 is a decrease to Net Position of \$242,200.

Exhibits

Exhibit 1: Resolution R22-02 with the following exhibits:

Exhibit A: Budget Revision 2022-07

Exhibit B: Change in Net Position (DCTA Only)

Exhibit B-1: Change in Net Position (DCTA & NTMC Combined)

Exhibit 2: Year-to-Date FY22 Budget Revisions

Submitted By:

Amanda Riddle

Senior Manager of Budget

Final Review:

Marisa Perry, CPA

Chief Financial Officer/VP of Finance

DENTON COUNTY TRANSPORTATION AUTHORITY RESOLUTION NO. R22-02

A RESOLUTION OF THE BOARD OF DIRECTORS OF THE DENTON COUNTY TRANSPORTATION AUTHORITY (DCTA) APPROVING FISCAL YEAR 2022 BUDGET REVISION NUMBER 2022-07 REVISED OPERATING AND CAPITAL BUDGET, ATTACHED HERETO AS EXHIBITS "A" AND "B", RESPECTIVELY; PROVIDING A REPEALING CLAUSE; AND PROVIDING AN EFFECTIVE DATE.

WHEREAS, DCTA budget is a well calculated estimate as to what will be needed for expenditures in the fiscal year; and

WHEREAS, budget estimates are often prepared months in advance of the actual expenditures and the possibility that the actual amount of the expenditure will be known in exact terms at the time of the budget preparation is unlikely; and

WHEREAS, it may become necessary to reforecast the annual expenditures and modify the budget by amendment; and

WHEREAS, the Board of Directors of the DCTA desires to amend the fiscal year 2022 Operating and Capital Budget as set forth in Exhibits "A" and "B", respectively.

NOW, THEREFORE, BE IT RESOLVED BY THE BOARD OF DIRECTORS OF THE DENTON COUNTY TRANSPORTATION AUTHORITY, THAT:

SECTION 1. The Operating and Capital Budget Revision attached hereto as Exhibits "A" and "B", respectively, be, and the same is hereby adopted and which shall amend the original budget adopted September 23, 2021, from and after the effective date of this Resolution.

SECTION 2. All provisions of the resolutions of the Board of Directors of the DCTA, in conflict with the provisions of this Resolution be, and the same are hereby, repealed, and all other provisions not in conflict with the provisions of this Resolution shall remain in full force and effect.

SECTION 3. This Resolution shall become effective immediately upon its passage and approval.

DULY PASSED AND APPROVED BY THE BOARD OF DIRECTORS OF THE DENTON COUNTY TRANSPORTATION AUTHORITY THE 24TH DAY OF FEBRUARY, 2022.

| | APPROVED: | |
|--|---------------------|--|
| | Cesar Molina, Chair | |
| ATTEST: | | |
| | | |
| Dianne Costa, Secretary (02-09-2022:TM 127689) | | |

Exhibit "A" Budget Revision 2022-07 (to be attached)

| | DENTON COUNTY TRANSPORTATION AUTHORIT BUDGET TRANSFER / REVISION REQUEST | | | _ |
|--|---|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| TRANSACTION TYPE: | Transfer 🗌 | | Number: 202 | 22-07 |
| | Revision ☑ | Current Budget Amount | Budget Revision Amount | Adjusted Budget Amount |
| ADDITIONS TO EXISTING BUDGET | | | | |
| OPERATING EXPENSES: Bus Operations: *Via Customer Service* | Purchased Transportation (535.50810) \$ Purchased Transportation (536.50810) Purchased Transportation (537.50810) | 3,173,172 \$ 227,616 2,084,674 | 145,320 \$ 16,954 79,926 | 3,318,492 244,570 2,164,600 |
| NON-OPERATING REVENUES: Rail Operations: | Refunds & Reimbursements (620.40235) | - | 1,027,200 | 1,027,200 |
| <u>CAPITAL:</u> | Joint Rail Operations Facility (JROF - 61302) | - | 1,027,200 | 1,027,200 |
| | Net Pos | sition Impact \$ | (242,200) | |

EXPLANATION: Bus Operations:

The additional \$242,200 in purchased transportation is for Via to provide customer support for GoZone for the remainder of the fiscal year. Task Order was presented to the Board in January and has been included on the February agenda for Board approval.

Rail Operations/Capital:

In January, the Board approved the receipt of DART design funds & execution of task orders with Jacobs Engineering for design of the Joint Rail Operations Facility (JROF) expansion of the DCTA Rail Operations & Maintenance Facility (ROMF).

| DATE: | 2.8.2022 | REQUESTED BY: | Amanda Riddle |
|-------|----------|---------------|---------------|
| DATE: | 2.9.2022 | REVIEWED BY: | Maiosomo |
| DATE: | | CEO: | |

Exhibit "B" Change in Net Position (to be attached)

DENTON COUNTY TRANSPORTATION AUTHORITY Change in Net Position

| Description | DCTA FY 2022 Adopted Budget | DCTA Completed Budget Revisions | DCTA Proposed Budget Revision 2022-07 | DCTA FY 2022 Working Budget |
|---|--------------------------------------|--|---|--------------------------------------|
| OPERATING REVENUE | 224.005 | <u> </u> | <u>^</u> | 370 ((2 |
| Passenger Revenues (Bus Farebox) | \$ 326,995 | \$ 52,667 | \$ - | \$ 379,662 |
| Passenger Revenues (Rail Farebox) | 262,917 | - | - | 262,917 |
| Contract Service Revenue | 3,915,759 | | - | 3,915,759 |
| Total Operating Revenue | 4,505,671 | 52,667 | - | 4,558,338 |
| OPERATING EXPENSES | | | | |
| Salary, Wages & Benefits | 5,103,643 | - | - | 5,103,643 |
| Outsourced Services & Charges | 4,610,662 | 472,650 | - | 5,083,312 |
| Materials & Supplies | 2,650,094 | 205,500 | - | 2,855,594 |
| Utilities | 526,281 | | _ | 526,281 |
| Insurance | 1,635,812 | 70,240 | _ | 1,706,052 |
| Purchased Transportation Services | 16,680,162 | 150,094 | 242,200 | 17,072,456 |
| Employee Development | 235,385 | .55,57. | , | 235,385 |
| Leases & Rentals | 139,772 | _ | _ | 139,772 |
| Depreciation Depreciation | 10,899,464 | _ | _ | 10,899,464 |
| —————————————————————————————————————— | | | | - |
| Total Operating Expenses | 42,481,275 | 898,484 | 242,200 | 43,621,959 |
| Operating Income / (Loss) | (37,975,604) | (845,817) | (242,200) | (39,063,621) |
| NON-OPERATING REVENUE / (EXPENSE) | | | | |
| Investment Income | 12,000 | - | - | 12,000 |
| Misc. Revenues | - | - | 1,027,200 | 1,027,200 |
| Sales Tax Revenue | 32,088,804 | 575,093 | - | 32,663,897 |
| Federal Grants & Reimbursements | 26,390,897 | - | - | 26,390,897 |
| State Grants & Reimbursements | - | - | - | - |
| Long Term Debt Interest/Expense | (237,800) | - | - | (237,800) |
| Total Non-Operating Revenue / (Expense) | 58,253,901 | 575,093 | 1,027,200 | 59,856,194 |
| Income (Loss) Before Transfers | 20,278,297 | (270,724) | 785,000 | 20,792,573 |
| Transfers Out | (6,364,715) | (828,352) | - | (7,193,067) |
| Transfers In | - | | - | - |
| Total Transfers | (6,364,715) | (828,352) | - | (7,193,067) |
| | | | | |
| CHANGE IN NET POSITION | \$ 13,913,582 | \$ (1,099,076) | \$ 785,000 | \$ 13,599,506 |
| Transfer to Capital Projects | (15,100,221) | (15,000) | (1,027,200) | (16,142,421) |
| Change in Net Position After Capital Project Transfer | \$ (1,186,639) | \$ (1,114,076) | \$ (242,200) | \$ (2,542,915) |

DENTON COUNTY TRANSPORTATION AUTHORITY Change in Net Position

| Description | DCTA FY 2022 Adopted Budget | DCTA Completed Budget Revisions | DCTA Proposed Budget Revision 2022-07 | DCTA FY 2022 Working Budget | NTMC FY 2022 Adopted Budget | NTMC Completed Budget Revisions | NTMC FY 2022 Working Budget | FY 2022 Adopted Budget | FY 2022 Working Budget |
|---|--------------------------------------|--|---|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|--|--------------------------------------|------------------------------|------------------------------|
| OPERATING REVENUE | | | | | | | | | |
| Passenger Revenues (Bus Farebox) | \$ 326,995 \$ | 52,667 | \$ - | \$ 379,662 | \$ - | \$ - \$ | - | \$ 326,995 | \$ 379,662 |
| Passenger Revenues (Rail Farebox) | 262,917 | - | - | 262,917 | - | - | - | 262,917 | 262,917 |
| Contract Service Revenue | 3,915,759 | - | - | 3,915,759 | | - | | 3,915,759 | 3,915,759 |
| Total Operating Revenue | 4,505,671 | 52,667 | - | 4,558,338 | - | - | - | 4,505,671 | 4,558,338 |
| OPERATING EXPENSES | | | | | | | | | |
| Salary, Wages & Benefits | 5,103,643 | - | - | 5,103,643 | 5,787,307 | 802,935 | 6,590,242 | 10,890,950 | 11.693.885 |
| Outsourced Services & Charges | 4,610,662 | 472,650 | _ | 5,083,312 | 450,970 | 1,922 | 452,892 | 5,061,632 | 5,536,204 |
| Materials & Supplies | 2,650,094 | 205,500 | _ | 2.855.594 | 1.936 | _ | 1,936 | 2,652,030 | 2.857.530 |
| Utilities | 526,281 | | _ | 526,281 | - | _ | - | 526,281 | 526,281 |
| Insurance | 1,635,812 | 70,240 | _ | 1,706,052 | 65,842 | 23,495 | 89.337 | 1,701,654 | 1,795,389 |
| Purchased Transportation Services | 16,680,162 | 150,094 | 242,200 | 17,072,456 | - | | - | 16,680,162 | 17,072,456 |
| Employee Development | 235,385 | - | - 12,200 | 235,385 | 58.660 | _ | 58,660 | 294,045 | 294.045 |
| Leases & Rentals | 139,772 | _ | _ | 139,772 | - | _ | - | 139,772 | 139,772 |
| Depreciation | 10,899,464 | _ | _ | 10,899,464 | _ | _ | _ | 10,899,464 | 10,899,464 |
| | | | | <u> </u> | | | - | | |
| Total Operating Expenses | 42,481,275 | 898,484 | 242,200 | 43,621,959 | 6,364,715 | 828,352 | 7,193,067 | 48,845,990 | 50,815,026 |
| Operating Income / (Loss) | (37,975,604) | (845,817) | (242,200) | (39,063,621) | (6,364,715) | (828,352) | (7,193,067) | (44,340,319) | (46,256,688) |
| NON-OPERATING REVENUE / (EXPENSE) | | | | | | | | | |
| Investment Income | 12,000 | - | - | 12,000 | - | - | - | 12,000 | 12,000 |
| Misc. Revenues | - | - | 1,027,200 | 1,027,200 | - | - | - | - | 1,027,200 |
| Sales Tax Revenue | 32,088,804 | 575,093 | - | 32,663,897 | - | - | - | 32,088,804 | 32,663,897 |
| Federal Grants & Reimbursements | 26,390,897 | - | - | 26,390,897 | - | - | - | 26,390,897 | 26,390,897 |
| State Grants & Reimbursements | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Long Term Debt Interest/Expense | (237,800) | - | - | (237,800) | - | - | - | (237,800) | (237,800) |
| Total Non-Operating Revenue / (Expense) | 58,253,901 | 575,093 | 1,027,200 | 59,856,194 | - | - | - | 58,253,901 | 59,856,194 |
| Income (Loss) Before Transfers | 20,278,297 | (270,724) | 785,000 | 20,792,573 | (6,364,715) | (828,352) | (7,193,067) | 13,913,582 | 13,599,506 |
| Transfers Out | (6,364,715) | (828,352) | - | (7,193,067) | - | - | _ | (6,364,715) | (7,193,067) |
| Transfers In | - | ` - | - | - | 6,364,715 | 828,352 | 7,193,067 | 6,364,715 | 7,193,067 |
| Total Transfers | (6,364,715) | (828,352) | - | (7,193,067) | 6,364,715 | 828,352 | 7,193,067 | - | - |
| CHANGE IN NET POSITION | \$ 13,913,582 \$ | (1,099,076) | \$ 785,000 | \$ 13,599,506 | \$ - : | \$ - \$ | 5 - | \$ 13,913,582 | \$ 13,599,506 |
| Transfer to Capital Projects | (15,100,221) | (15,000) | (1,027,200) | (16,142,421) | - | - | - | (15,100,221) | (16,142,421) |
| Change in Net Position After Capital Project Transfer | \$ (1,186,639) \$ | (1,114,076) | \$ (242,200) | \$ (2,542,915) | \$ - | \$ - \$ | - | \$ (1,186,639) | \$ (2,542,915) |

YEAR-TO-DATE FY22 BUDGET REVISIONS

| | | YEAR-TO-DATE FY22 BODGET | INEVISIONS | | | |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------------|--|-----------------------------|------|--|--|
| | | DCTA 2022-01 (Presented to DCTA Boa *Approved by DCTA Board in Octo | |)21) | | |
| | | | Current Budget Amount | | Budget Revision Amount | Adjusted Budget Amount |
| OPERATING REV Bus Operations | <u>ENUES:</u> 537.40100 | Passenger Revenues | \$ 71,399 | \$ | 1,565 | \$ 72,964 |
| OPERATING EXP | ENSES: 180.50309 180.50440 | Professional Services Computer Materials & Supplies | 194,000 40,000 | | 25,650 48,700 | 219,650 88,700 |
| Bus Operations | 537.50810 | Purchased Transportation | 1,934,580 | | 150,094 | 2,084,674 |
| | | Ne | et Position Impact | \$ | (222,879) | |
| | | DCTA 2022-02 (Presented to DCTA Boa *Approved by DCTA Board in Decer | | | | |
| | | | Current Budget Amount | | Budget Revision Amount | Adjusted Budget Amount |
| NON-OPERATIN | <u>G REVENUE:</u> 900.40300 | | \$ 32,088,804 | \$ | 575,093 | \$ 32,663,897 |
| | | Ne | et Position Impact | \$ | 575,093 | |
| | | DCTA 2022-03 (Presented to DCTA Boa *Approved by DCTA Board in Decer | | | | |
| | | | Current Budget Amount | | Budget Revision Amount | Adjusted Budget Amount |
| OPERATING REV Bus Operations | <u>ENUES:</u> 511.40100 | Passenger Revenues | \$ 62,763 | \$ | 51,102 | \$ 113,865 |
| OPERATING EXP Bus Operations | ENSES: 511.50410 511.50635 | Fuel Auto Liability Insurance | 108,684 40,601 | | 171,800 70,240 | 280,484 110,841 |
| DCTA TRANSFER Bus Operations | OUT TO N | TMC OPERATING BUDGET: 2 Salaries & Benefits | 502,676 | | 802,935 | 1,305,611 |
| , | 711.50306 711.50630 | Uniforms Workers Compensation Insurance | 2,219 6,390 | | 1,922 23,495 | 4,141 29,885 |
| | | Ne | et Position Impact | \$ | (1,019,290) | |
| | | DCTA 2022-04 (Presented to DCTA Boa *Approved by DCTA Board in Janu | | 021) | | |
| | | Approved by Delia Bound Infand | Current Budget Amount | | Budget Revision Amount | Adjusted Budget Amount |
| CAPITAL: | TR | TRiP Program - FY22 (10703) TRiP Program FY22 - Denton (10703.1) LiP Program FY22 - Highland Village (10703.2) TRiP Program FY22 - Lewisville (10703.3) | \$ 7,119,429 - - - | \$ | (7,019,429) 3,074,578 324,900 3,619,951 | \$ 100,000 3,074,578 324,900 3,619,951 |
| | | Ne | et Position Impact | \$ | - | |

| | | DCTA 2022-05 (Presented to DCTA Board *Approved by DCTA Board in January | | 2) _ | | | |
|--|---------------------------------------|---|-----------------------------|------------------------------|------------------------------|----|------------------------------|
| | | Approved by DCTA Board III January | Current Budget Amount | Budget Revision Amount | | | Adjusted Budget Amount |
| <u>OPERATING EXP</u> <i>G&A</i> | <u>ENSES:</u> 110.50309 | Professional Services \$ | 302,668 | \$ | 447,000 | \$ | 749,668 |
| | | Net i | Position Impact | \$ | (447,000) | | |
| | | NTMC 2022-N001 (Presented to NTMC Boat *Approved by NTMC Board in Januar | | 022) | | | |
| | | | Current Budget Amount | | Budget Revision Amount | | Adjusted Budget Amount |
| OPERATING EXP | 'ENSES: | _ | | | | | |
| Bus Operations | 711.501/502 711.50306 711.50630 | Salaries & Benefits \$ Uniforms Workers Compensation Insurance | 502,676 2,219 6,390 | \$ | 802,935 1,922 23,495 | \$ | 1,305,611 4,141 29,885 |
| NTMC TRANSFF | R IN FROM DCT | 'A OPERATING BUDGET: | | | | | |
| Bus Operations | 711.501/502 | Transfers In | 6,364,715 | | 828,352 | | 7,193,067 |
| | | Net i | Position Impact | \$ | - | | |
| | | DCTA 2022-06 (Presented to DCTA Board *Budget Transfer - No Approval Necess | | | | | |
| | | <i> </i> | Current Budget Amount | | Budget Revision Amount | | Adjusted Budget Amount |
| OPERATING EXP | 'ENSES: | | | | | | |
| | 500.50318 590.50318 | Facilities Maintenance \$ Facilities Maintenance | 236,380 17,100 | \$ | (32,900) 32,900 | \$ | 203,480 50,000 |
| Bus Operations | | | | | | | |
| Bus Operations Rail Operations | 620.50410 | Fuel | 1,101,600 | | (15,000) | | 1,086,600 |

Net Position Impact \$



February 24, 2022

SUBJECT: Review and Discuss Project Manager Office (PMO) Progress Report

Recommendation

This is a discussion item only. There is no recommendation at this time.

Background

On February 1, 2022, Accenture began a 6-month engagement to deliver three (3) workstreams: planning and facilitation of a Board-Staff Strategic Planning Workshop, ERP alternative selection, and Service & Fare Analysis and Design. The Regular Agenda will feature a standing item to discuss progress of these initiatives. Accenture's scope of work under Task Order #3 includes:

- Board-Staff Strategic Planning Workshop Planning and Facilitation (scheduling to be discussed at March meeting)
- ERP Alternative Selection
- Conducting Service Network and Fare Design Research
- Developing Data Analysis and Visualization Strategy, dashboard design, and sourcing support

Prior Board Discussion

• January 27, 2022 – Board approved Task Order #3 with Accenture, LLP and associated budget amendment for additional services. Accenture will provide an update on workstream activities at monthly Board meetings beginning February 2022.

Progress Report - Activities since January 2022 board update:

February activities focused on mobilizing and kicking off activities for each of the three workstreams. Integrated workplans and milestones have been developed and delivered to staff. Accenture continues its support of ridership data analysis and reporting. Further detail regarding February activities is included in Exhibit 1.

Exhibits

Exhibit 1: Accenture PMO Status Report

Submitted By: Chris Newport, Accenture

Regular Agenda 5, Exhibit 1



PMO Board Update

Week Ending 02/18/2022

Program Status Overview

Complete G On Track Y At Risk R Behind/Overdue

| | | Task O | rder #3 | | | |
|---------|--------------------------------------|------------------------------------|-----------------------------|--------------------------------------|---|------------------------------|
| Overall | Board-Staff Strategic Planning | Service Analysis & Reporting | ERP Sourcing Strategy | Service & Fare Design Analysis | Current Focus / Accomplishments | Risks/Issues/ Mitigations |
| G | G | G | G | G | Board-Staff Strategic Planning Developing pre-workshop questions for Board, draft Agenda, activities, and focus areas of workshop Service Analysis & Reporting Updated GoZone data in the draft DCTA Performance Dashboard Developed 12-week work plan for dashboard development, standardized data collection and storage techniques Utilizing custom-built Excel macro to parse data in a format that can be blended with GoZone data for comparative analyses Reviewed dashboarding tool licensing structures, potential user counts, and procurement options with IT staff Delivered monthly ridership analysis to Board ERP Sourcing Strategy Conducted ERP alternative product overview demonstrations Delivered evaluation team assessment toolkit for ERP alternative vendor responses and demonstrations Service & Fare Design Analysis Developed integrated workplan, discussed and delivered to DCTA staff to develop activity timeline with next steps and milestones | None at this time |



February 24, 2022

SUBJECT: Consider Approval of Amendment to Task Order with River North Transit LLC (Via) Regarding GoZone Customer Support Services

Recommendation

Authorize the CEO to execute Amendment #4 to Task Order #1 with River North Transit LLC "Via" for Via to provide phone and E-mail customer support during all hours of GoZone operation pending legal review of the amendment.

Background

Shortly after service launch, Via assumed the responsibility of both phone and E-mail customer support of GoZone operations beyond after-hours support. Beginning on October 1, 2021, Via began to provide this support at no charge to DCTA to ensure riders of the GoZone service received dedicated support without overwhelming DCTA customer service operations. Via extended this level of free support until March 1, 2022, and staff is seeking approval of Amendment #4 to allow Via to continue providing support for GoZone until the end of Fiscal Year 2022.

Previous Board Activity & Action

• January 27, 2021 - Discuss Amendment #4 to Via Task Order #1 for Via to Provide Customer Service for GoZone

Identified Need

Customer service for all transit modes is currently provided by NTMC call center employees. Support for all modes of transit by customer service staff would be negatively impacted by the additional load that GoZone calls would create without Via's current support level.

Financial Impact

The proposed monthly fee for Via to provide GoZone customer support is \$35,000 for an increase of \$242,200 in purchased transportation services for FY22 (\$35,000 x 7 months minus \$2,800 credit). A budget amendment for this item is included on the February board agenda as Resolution R22-02, approving Budget Revision 2022-07.

Exhibits

Exhibit 1: DCTA Amendment #4 - Full Time Customer Support (Mar 2022 - Sept 2022)

Submitted By:

Javier Trilla, AVP of Innovation and Information Technology

Regular Agenda 6, Exhibit 1

Amendment #4 to the AGREEMENT FOR MOBILITY SERVICES and to the Denton County Transportation Authority Task Order No. 1

River North Transit LLC ("Via") and Denton County Transportation Authority ("Customer" and, together with Via, the "Parties") have entered into those certain agreements titled AGREEMENT FOR MOBILITY SERVICES, Denton County Transportation Authority Task Order No. 1, Amendment #1 and Amendment #2 to the AGREEMENT FOR MOBILITY SERVICES and to the Denton County Transportation Authority Task Order No. 1 (collectively, the "Agreement"), dated May 15, 2019, June 2, 2021, July 27, 2021, September 7, 2021, and XXX respectively. Upon execution of this Amendment #4 to the Agreement for Mobility Services and to the Denton County Transportation Authority Task Order No. 1 (the "Amendment"), the Parties agree to modify the Agreement as follows:

 Amendment: The following language is added as Section 11 of Denton County Transportation Authority Task Order No. 1:

Section 11: Scheduling and Customer Support River North will be responsible for phone and email support for riders including reservations, scheduling, and customer support, as well as phone and email support for drivers. Support will be provided during the following standard GoZone operating hours:

- Monday-Thursday: 5 a.m. 1 a.m.
- Friday: 5 a.m. − 2 a.m.
- Saturday: 8 a.m. − 2 a.m.
- Sundays and 10 holidays: 8 a.m. 6 p.m.

The duration of this service shall last for a period of seven (7) months effective March 1, 2022 through September 30, 2022, and is subject to the extension of a one year term upon mutual written agreement of the parties on terms to be agreed (including any adjustment to fees for additional months of support). Customer shall pay a total of \$242,200 for these services. Via will invoice DCTA on or before the 5th business day of each month for support costs incurred in the prior month.

Service Performance: The service requirements included below are specific requirements for service performance and shall be used by the Customer to evaluate River North's performance on a weekly or monthly basis, depending upon the exact service requirement.

- Customer Complaints: All customer complaints submitted to River North or the Customer and that are received during the agreed upon timeframe shall be responded to by River North within 48 hours.
- Call Center Responsiveness: Call wait times should not exceed 5 minutes on average, based on a monthly wait time average.

After the conclusion of each week or month, depending on the exact service requirement, River North shall calculate and notify the Customer in writing of any failure to meet the above service level requirements. If River North fails to meet the service requirements above, or any additional service impacts occur outside of those stated above, the Customer and River North will discuss and agree upon remedies for these failures.

Commented [1]: DCTA to fill in date with Amendment #3 ratification once it's signed by both parties.

Amendment #3 does not need board approval on their end.

2. Customer Support Pricing:

| Monthly Fee for All Support (Incl. Late Night + Weekend) | \$35,000 |
|---|-----------|
| March 1, 2022 – September 30, 2022 | |
| Total Support Cost | \$245,000 |
| March 1, 2022 – September 30, 2022 | |
| Credit: Existing Monthly Fee for Late Night + Weekend Support | (\$2,800) |
| March 1 - 7, 2022 (already contracted in Amendment #2) | |
| 2022 Incremental Cost to DCTA | \$242,200 |
| March 1, 2022 – September 30, 2022 | |

The pricing above reflects a maximum of 50,000 monthly rides and current GoZone service parameters. Pricing will need to be adjusted if monthly rides exceed 50,000 or if other types of service are added (e.g., Access / ADA paratransit service, etc.).

3. Conflicts, Use of Terms, Governing Law: Capitalized terms used but not defined herein have the meanings set forth in the Agreement. Except as expressly provided herein, the terms and conditions of the Agreement remain unchanged. This Amendment #4 will be governed by the same law as the Agreement.

This Amendment #4 is effective as of the date executed by both Parties.

| River North Transit LLC | Denton County Transportation Authority |
|-------------------------|---|
| Ву: | Ву: |
| Name: Alex Lavoie | Name: Raymond Suarez |
| Title: Manager | Title: Chief Executive Officer |
| Date: | Date: |



February 24, 2022

SUBJECT: Presentation and Discussion of Approach to Enhance Value of the A-train

Recommendation

This is an informational item. No Board action is required.

Background

The DCTA Board is beginning to consider opportunities to enhance the value of the A-train as a regional asset. The presentation to accompany this item will provide a general approach for the Board's consideration and feedback.

Previous Board Activity

The Board has not taken previous action on this item.

Identified Need

No action is required.

Exhibits

None.

Submitted By:

Paul Cristina, Deputy CEO



February 24, 2022

SUBJECT: Provide Update on Burns Property Lease

Recommendation

This is an informational item. No Board action is required.

Background

DCTA purchased a 2.5-acre parcel of land in Lewisville, known as the Burns Property, on June 29, 2019. DCTA and the Seller executed a post-closing leaseback to enable the Seller to continue occupying the property until the Seller could find and develop a suitable site to accommodate their business. The initial term of the lease was two years, expiring on June 29, 2022. The Seller pays no monthly rent to DCTA, per the terms of the Purchase Agreement and Lease.

The lease can be renewed with 60-day notice in advance of expiration for up to one year, or June 29, 2023. If extended, the lease calls for a \$14,000 monthly lease rate payable by the Seller to DCTA.

Staff anticipates the Seller will contact DCTA in the near future to request extension of the lease and a waiver of the \$14,000 per month lease rate. At that time, the Board will have the opportunity to take action.

Previous Board Activity

The Board has not taken previous action on this item.

Identified Need

No action is required.

Exhibits

None.

Submitted By:

Paul Cristina, Deputy CEO



February 24, 2022

SUBJECT: Staff Briefing on Recent Inclement Weather Response and Recovery

Recommendation

This is an informational item only.

Background

DCTA staff worked around the clock to respond quickly to rapidly changing weather conditions and associated service impacts as a result of the winter weather that hit North Texas on the evening of Wednesday, February 2, 2022.

On Wednesday night and early Thursday morning DCTA's rail contractor, Rio Grande Pacific, mobilized to de-ice railroad switches for the beginning of service Thursday morning. Railroad switch heaters were activated to prevent ice/snow related failures. Crews also treated the rail stations, bus shelters and the entryways from the parking lot to the station platform with biodegradable ice-melt in advance of Thursday service. Biodegradable ice-melt was also stocked on the trains for crews to spot treat if needed.

Early Thursday morning, at the request of Via, GoZone service was suspended. DCTA made the decision to continue operating A-train Service and Connect Bus Service on a Saturday schedule. Paratransit service and shuttle service along the Monsignor King route were also continued to provide vulnerable populations access to medical facilities and the emergency shelters across the City of Denton.

As travel conditions deteriorated into Thursday evening, with heavy icing anticipated for Friday morning, coupled with the decision by DART to suspend all services, DCTA staff decided to suspend Connect and A-train service. Via also decided to suspend GoZone service. Resources were shifted to focus on providing lifeline trips for paratransit customers and the Monsignor King emergency shelter shuttle.

Due to unsafe conditions on Saturday morning, operator shortages, a lack of connectivity to DART, A-train and Connect services remained suspended. However, as weather conditions improved throughout the afternoon, GoZone operated on a limited schedule between the hours of 12 p.m. – 7 p.m., completing nearly 1,100 trips.

Regular updates were provided to the Board, customers, and member cities. The safety of our operators, the traveling public, and our communities at large remained the highest priority throughout the weather event.

Previous Board Activity & Action

There has been no previous Board level activity on this item.

Identified Need

There is no identified need.

Financial Impact

There is no financial impact.



Exhibits – N/A

Submitted By:

Brittney Farr, Director of Government Relations



February 24, 2022

SUBJECT: Consider A Second Amended and Restated Employment Agreement Between Denton County Transportation Authority (DCTA) and the Chief Executive Officer (CEO)

Identified Need

The Board of Directors will deliberate the terms of the employment contract with the CEO.



February 24, 2022

SUBJECT: Monthly Sales Tax Receipts

Recommendation

This item is presented for informational purposes only. No action is required.

Background

Sales tax represents the single largest source of revenue for DCTA at 51.34% of Fiscal Year 2022 budgeted revenues. The sales tax budget for FY22 is \$32,663,897. Because of its importance in funding of DCTA's ongoing operations, the Board adopted a Budget Contingency Plan that outlines the Agency's response when declines in sales tax hit a specific target.

For the month of February, receipts were favorable compared to budget.

- Sales tax for sales generated in the month of December and received in February was \$3,771,295.
- This represents an increase of 9.07% or \$313,648 compared to budget for the month.
- Compared to the same month last year, sales tax receipts are \$414,356 or 12.34% higher.
- Member city collections for the month compared to prior year are as follows:
 - o City of Lewisville up 4.82%
 - o City of Denton up 23.48%
 - o City of Highland Village up 18.73%

Previous Board Activity & Action

There has been no previous Board-level activity on this item.

Identified Need

Provides the Board of Directors a monthly status on sales tax collections.

Financial Impact

This item is included for informational purposes only; there is no financial impact associated with this informational item.

Exhibits

Exhibit 1: FY22 Monthly Sales Tax Report

Submitted By:

Amanda Riddle, Senior Manager of Budget

Final Review

Marisa Perry, CPA

Chief Financial Officer/VP of Finance

DENTON COUNTY TRANSPORTATION AUTHORITY

SALES TAX REPORT BUDGET TO ACTUAL AND PREVIOUS YEAR COMPARISON

| Sales Generated in Month of: | n Received in Month of: | | 2021-2022 Adopted Budget | 2 | 021-2022 Revised Budget | | 021-2022 ear Actual | A | Variance Actual to Original Budget | CY Actual CY Origin Budget % Variance | nal | A R | ariance ctual to Revised Budget | CY Actua CY Revis Budge % Variand | ed t | | 020-2021 ear Actual | A | ariance ctual to ior Year | CY Actual to PY Actual % Variance |
|------------------------------------|----------------------------|----|--------------------------------|----|-------------------------------|----------|------------------------|----|---|--|------|-----|--|--|---------|----|------------------------|----|---------------------------------|---|
| 0.4.1 | Daniela | خ | 2 022 011 | ċ | 2 022 011 | ~ | 2 025 241 | خ | (107 (70) | 2 | FF0/ | Ļ | (107 (70) | | | ċ | 2.044.572 | خ | (10.222) | 0.449/ |
| October | December | \$ | 3,032,911 | \$ | 3,032,911 | \$ | 2,925,241 | \$ | (107,670) | | .55% | \$ | (107,670) | | 3.55% | \$ | 2,944,573 | \$ | (19,333) | -0.66% |
| November | January | \$ | 2,696,417 | \$ | 2,696,417 | \$ | 3,097,630 | \$ | 401,213 | 14. | 88% | \$ | 401,213 |]2 | .88% | \$ | 2,617,881 | \$ | 479,749 | 18.33% |
| December | February | \$ | 3,457,647 | \$ | 3,457,647 | \$ | 3,771,295 | \$ | 313,648 | 9. | 07% | \$ | 313,648 | Ġ | 0.07% | \$ | 3,356,939 | \$ | 414,356 | 12.34% |
| January | March | \$ | 2,365,559 | \$ | 2,429,458 | | | | | 0.0 | 00% | | | C | .00% | \$ | 2,296,659 | | | 0.00% |
| February | April | \$ | 2,143,386 | \$ | 2,207,285 | | | | | 0.0 | 00% | | | C | .00% | \$ | 2,080,957 | | | 0.00% |
| March | May | \$ | 3,470,214 | \$ | 3,534,113 | | | | | 0.0 | 00% | | | C | .00% | \$ | 3,369,140 | | | 0.00% |
| April | June | \$ | 2,567,236 | \$ | 2,631,135 | | | | | 0.0 | 00% | | | C | .00% | \$ | 2,839,395 | | | 0.00% |
| May | July | \$ | 2,258,937 | \$ | 2,322,836 | | | | | 0.0 | 00% | | | C | .00% | \$ | 3,171,719 | | | 0.00% |
| June | August | \$ | 2,663,784 | \$ | 2,727,683 | | | | | 0.0 | 00% | | | C | .00% | \$ | 3,583,080 | | | 0.00% |
| July | September | \$ | 2,248,852 | \$ | 2,312,751 | | | | | 0.0 | 00% | | | C | .00% | \$ | 2,903,336 | | | 0.00% |
| August | October | \$ | 2,471,690 | \$ | 2,535,589 | | | | | 0.0 | 00% | | | C | .00% | \$ | 2,878,254 | | | 0.00% |
| September | November | \$ | 2,712,171 | \$ | 2,776,072 | | | | | 0.0 | 00% | | | C | .00% | \$ | 3,346,913 | | | 0.00% |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | YTD TOTAL | \$ | 9,186,975 | \$ | 9,186,975 | \$ | 9,794,165 | \$ | 607,190 | 6 | .61% | \$ | 607,190 | | 5.61% | \$ | 8,919,393 | \$ | 874,773 | 9.81% |
| FISCAL | YEAR TOTAL | \$ | 32,088,804 | \$ | 32,663,897 | | | | | | | | | | | \$ | 35,388,847 | | | |

⁽A) Formula: YTD Variance Actual to Original Budget/YTD Original Budget

Sources: Texas Comptroller of Public Accounts and DCTA Finance Department Prepared By: Denton County Transportation Authority Finance Department February 9, 2022

⁽B) Formula: YTD Variance"Actual to Revised Budget/YTD Revised Budget

DENTON COUNTY TRANSPORTATION AUTHORITY

MEMBER CITIES SALES TAX REPORT MONTH ALLOCATION IS RECEIVED FROM COMPTROLLER PREVIOUS YEAR COMPARISON

| | | CITY OF L | SVILLE | | | CITY OF HIGHLAND VILLAGE | | | | | | | | | | | |
|--------------------------------|-------------------|-----------|--------------------------|----|--------------------------|--------------------------|------------------------------------|---|-----------------------------------|----------------------------|----|------------------------|----|------------------------|----|---------------------------------|---|
| Sales Generated Month of | | _ | 2020-2021 Tear Actual | | 2021-2022 'ear Actual | A | Variance Actual to rior Year | CY Actual to PY Actual % Variance | Sales Generated i Month of: | n Received in Month of: | _ | 020-2021 ear Actual | _ | 021-2022 ear Actual | A | ariance ctual to ior Year | CY Actual to PY Actual % Variance |
| October | December | \$ | 3,348,633 | \$ | 4,067,980 | \$ | 719,347 | 21.48% | October | December | \$ | 341,390 | \$ | 409,602 | \$ | 68,213 | 19.98% |
| November | January | \$ | 3,755,579 | \$ | 4,446,756 | \$ | 691,177 | 18.40% | November | January | \$ | 354,573 | \$ | 444,066 | \$ | 89,493 | 25.24% |
| December | February | \$ | 4,903,701 | \$ | 5,140,124 | \$ | 236,424 | 4.82% | December | February | \$ | 503,020 | \$ | 597,222 | \$ | 94,202 | 18.73% |
| January | March | \$ | 3,072,003 | | | | | 0.00% | January | March | \$ | 320,412 | | | | | 0.00% |
| February | April | \$ | 2,971,403 | | | | | 0.00% | February | April | \$ | 288,219 | | | | | 0.00% |
| March | May | \$ | 4,956,466 | | | | | 0.00% | March | May | \$ | 436,049 | | | | | 0.00% |
| April | June | \$ | 3,990,693 | | | | | 0.00% | April | June | \$ | 353,678 | | | | | 0.00% |
| May | July | \$ | 6,076,775 | | | | | 0.00% | May | July | \$ | 371,973 | | | | | 0.00% |
| June | August | \$ | 5,447,446 | | | | | 0.00% | June | August | \$ | 449,307 | | | | | 0.00% |
| July | September | \$ | 4,010,507 | | | | | 0.00% | July | September | \$ | 395,735 | | | | | 0.00% |
| August | October | \$ | 3,945,754 | | | | | 0.00% | August | October | \$ | 370,264 | | | | | 0.00% |
| September | November | \$ | 4,735,921 | | | | | 0.00% | September | November | \$ | 412,047 | | | | | 0.00% |
| | YTD TOTAL | \$ | 12,007,912 | \$ | 13,654,860 | \$ | 1,646,948 | 13.72% | | YTD TOTAL | \$ | 1,198,982 | \$ | 1,450,890 | \$ | 251,908 | 21.01% |
| | FISCAL YEAR TOTAL | \$ | 51,214,879 | | | | | | F | SISCAL YEAR TOTAL | \$ | 4,596,666 | | | | | |

| | | | CITY OF | DEN' | TON | | | |
|--|---|----------------------------|--|----------|-------------------------------------|----------------|------------------------------------|---|
| Sales Generated Month o | | _ | 2020-2021 ear Actual | _ | 2021-2022 ear Actual | A | /ariance .ctual to rior Year | CY Actual to PY Actual % Variance |
| October November December January February March April May June July August September | December January February March April May June July August September October November | \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ | 3,174,573 3,050,388 4,149,443 3,086,526 2,606,494 4,277,512 3,557,513 3,442,340 4,173,943 3,845,740 3,749,030 4,385,475 | \$ \$ \$ | 3,676,801 3,708,019 5,123,779 | \$ \$ \$ | 502,228 657,631 974,336 | 15.82% 21.56% 23.48% 0.00% 0.00% 0.00% 0.00% 0.00% 0.00% 0.00% |
| | YTD TOTAL FISCAL YEAR TOTAL | \$ \$ | 10,374,404 | \$ | 12,508,599 | \$ | 2,134,195 | 20.57% |

Sources: Texas Comptroller of Public Accounts and DCTA Finance Department Prepared By: Denton County Transportation Authority Finance Department February 9, 2022

ALL TRANSIT AGENCIES

MONTHLY SALES AND USE TAX COMPARISON SUMMARY

| Transit Agency | Transit Agency Current Rate | | Net Payment This Period | | Comparable ment Prior Year | % Change | Pay % Change (C | | or Year Payments TD (Calendar) | % Change |
|--------------------|-----------------------------|----|----------------------------|----|-------------------------------|----------|--------------------|-------------|-----------------------------------|----------|
| Austin MTA | 1.00% | \$ | 33,064,317 | \$ | 27,126,929 | 21.88% | \$ | 62,031,799 | \$ 48,349,069 | 28.29% |
| Corpus Christi MTA | 0.50% | \$ | 3,769,194 | \$ | 3,328,096 | 13.25% | \$ | 6,851,829 | \$ 5,944,715 | 15.25% |
| Dallas MTA | 1.00% | \$ | 77,120,685 | \$ | 67,587,453 | 14.10% | \$ | 139,006,740 | \$ 116,855,512 | 18.95% |
| Denton CTA | 0.50% | \$ | 3,771,295 | \$ | 3,356,939 | 12.34% | \$ | 6,868,925 | \$ 5,974,820 | 14.96% |
| El Paso CTD | 0.50% | \$ | 6,341,933 | \$ | 5,417,102 | 17.07% | \$ | 11,454,248 | \$ 9,402,977 | 21.81% |
| Fort Worth MTA | 0.50% | \$ | 10,341,005 | \$ | 8,731,284 | 18.43% | \$ | 18,547,185 | \$ 15,684,748 | 18.24% |
| Houston MTA | 1.00% | \$ | 93,358,837 | \$ | 82,068,522 | 13.75% | \$ | 171,623,675 | \$ 143,220,301 | 19.83% |
| Laredo CTD | 0.25% | \$ | 1,135,502 | \$ | 914,595 | 24.15% | \$ | 2,021,831 | \$ 1,614,356 | 25.24% |
| San Antonio ATD | 0.25% | \$ | 9,195,378 | \$ | 7,857,954 | 17.02% | \$ | 16,519,965 | \$ 13,608,653 | 21.39% |
| San Antonio MTA | 0.50% | \$ | 20,332,951 | \$ | 17,421,898 | 16.70% | \$ | 36,669,542 | \$ 30,166,975 | 21.55% |
| TOTAL | .S | \$ | 258,431,097 | \$ | 223,810,773 | 15.47% | \$ | 471,595,738 | \$ 390,822,125 | 20.67% |

Sources: Texas Comptroller of Public Accounts and DCTA Finance Department Prepared By: Denton County Transportation Authority Finance Department

February 9, 2022



February 24, 2022

SUBJECT: Monthly Mobility-as-a-Service Update

Recommendation

For information only. No action required.

Background

A Request for Proposals (RFP) was released on January 16, 2019 for Mobility as a Service (MaaS). Firms were invited to submit proposals (for both federal and non-federal funding project categories) to provide innovative mobility service to DCTA member cities, contracted communities, partner organizations, as well as large employment centers and other areas as the need arises. On March 12, 2019, DCTA received thirty-seven (37) proposals in response to the RFP. Thirty-three (33) proposals were deemed responsive and were evaluated by the evaluation team. The evaluation team rejected two proposals that scored less than seventy (70) points and recommended award to thirty-one (31) firms. The Board of Directors approved the award of Mobility-as-a-Service to thirty-one firms and reduced the total annual contract value of \$2,400,000 to \$75,000 for all task orders issued under the master on-call contracts. One of the recommended firms will not execute a contract due to business operational changes; therefore, thirty (30) firms remain eligible for contract execution. As requested by the Board of Directors, staff is providing a monthly update on all Mobility-as-a-Service commitments, activities, and expenses.

To date, the following twenty-six contracts have been fully executed:

- AJL International
- Bird Rides
- Bubbl Investments, LLC.
- Dashboard Story dba DUET
- DemandTrans Solutions
- DoubleMap
- Downtowner Holdings, LLC.
- First Transit
- Ford Smart Mobility, LLC.

- Irving Holdings
- Iteris
- Kapsch
- Lyft
- Moovel
- Moovit
- MV Transportation
- Muve: Quebec, Inc.
- Quebec, Inc. dba Transit

- RideCo
- Rideshark Corporation
- River North (Via)
- Roundtrip
- Routematch
- Spare Labs, Inc.
- Spare Labs, Inc. (with First Transit)
- Transdev North America

The remaining four contracts, all with software companies (Passport, SeatsX, Token Transit and Transloc), have been placed on hold until a need arises to enter into a contract for software.

Previous Board Activity & Action

Task Order #1 Lewisville Lakeway Zone and Denton Evening Zone was issued to Spare Labs, Inc. for Platform-as-a Service (Spare Platform). The task order was approved for award at the June 2020 Board meeting and was issued on 6/30/2020 for a not-to-exceed amount of \$50,000 per year with an initial term of two years and one two-year option to extend (total of 4 years). \$36,616 has been paid for this task order through September 2021. This service was replaced by the GoZone services on September 7, 2021.

Task Order #2 On-Demand Services in Member Cities and Contracted Cities was discussed at the June 2020 Board meeting and was presented at the September 2020 Board meeting to authorize negotiations with two firms. In January 2021, the Board approved and authorized staff to enter into a Task Order with River North (Via) to move forward with the recommendations and implementation of an On-Demand Service plan. In April 2021, the Board authorized a task order in the amount of \$33,520,691 for a period of four years, with a yearly breakdown presented below in the Financial Impact section.



Task Order #3 On-Demand Services for the McKinney Urban Transit District (MUTD) was requested by the City of McKinney. The City of McKinney has asked DCTA and DART, as a joint partnership, to provide on-demand services for the MUTD member cities. Services provided by DCTA to MUTD terminated on December 31, 2021. The DART Board of Directors approved an agreement with Spare Labs at its September 28th Board meeting. Spare Labs and DART began providing services to MUTD in January 2022.

Identified Need

Provides the Board of Directors a monthly status on Mobility-as-a-Services Contracts

Financial Impact

The breakdown of Task Order #2 with Via is included in the table below. As of January 31, 2022, \$141,600 was incurred toward up front hard costs. DCTA has also incurred for \$2,402,257 related to GoZone service hours. An amendment of \$74,900 was approved in September 2021 for scheduling and customer support; \$59,920 has been incurred on this project as of January 31, 2022.

| | | Year 1 | | Year 2 | | Year 3 | Year 4 | |
|---------------------|----|-----------|----|-----------|----|-----------|--------------|---------------|
| Up Front Hard Costs | \$ | 238,000 | \$ | 10,500 | \$ | - | \$ - | |
| Base Service | | 4,068,910 | | 5,512,341 | | 5,623,176 | 5,735,345 | |
| Phase I Add-Ons | | 1,266,455 | | 1,629,446 | | 1,662,208 | 1,695,365 | |
| Phase II Add-Ons | | 1,405,426 | | 1,527,013 | | 1,557,716 | 1,588,790 | |
| | ς | 6.978.791 | ς | 8.679.300 | ς | 8.843.100 | \$ 9.019.500 | \$ 33 520 691 |

Exhibits

N/A

Submitted By:

Brandy Hazel, Manager of Contracts & Procurement

Final Review:

Athena Forrester, AVP of Regulatory Compliance



February 24, 2022

SUBJECT: Budget Information

Recommendation

This item is presented for informational purposes only. No action is required. The Financial Management Policies authorize the CEO to approve budget transfers between expense categories and departments, not to exceed 5% of the total annual operating budget.

Background

The DCTA budget is prepared months in advance of the start of the fiscal year and not all expenses can be anticipated at the time of the budget preparation. Therefore, during the fiscal year, it may become necessary to reforecast the annual expenses and complete transfers between budget categories and/or departments based on changing needs of the agency. Revising the budget for material changes will provide a better forecasting and management tool for the Board and DCTA staff for future periods.

| | BUI | dget transfer | / revision requ | JEST | | | | |
|-----------------------------|----------|-------------------|--------------------|-------------|------|----------------|-----|-----------|
| TRANSACTION TYPE: | Transfer | • | | | | Number: | 202 | 2-06 |
| | Revision | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | rent | Budget | | Adjusted |
| | | | | Bu | dget | Revision | | Budget |
| | | | | Am | ount | Amount | | Amount |
| TRANSFERS WITHIN EXISTING B | UDGET | | | | | | | |
| OPERATING EXPENSES: | | | | | | | | |
| Para On anations | | Facilities Mainte | nance (500.50318) | \$ 236 | 380 | \$ (32,900) | \$ | 203,480 |
| Bus Operations: | | Facilities Mainte | nance (590.50318) | 17 | ,100 | 32,900 | | 50,000 |
| Rail Operations: | | | Fuel (620.50410) | 1,101, | 600 | (15,000) | | 1,086,600 |
| CAPITAL EXPENSES: | | | | | | | | |
| | | Brownfield Re | emediation (61605) | 405, | 000 | 15,000 | | 420,000 |
| | | | Net Po | osition Imp | act | \$ - | | |

Previous Board Activity & Action

The FY22 budget was originally adopted on September 23, 2021. This is the sixth budget revision related to the FY22 budget.

Identified Need

Provides the Board of Directors a monthly status on any budget transfers completed.

Financial Impact

Budget Revision 2022-06 allows the Agency to better allocate funds between bus departments related to facilities maintenance. This transfer also increases the Brownfield Remediation capital project for anticipated costs related to the closure. This increase is covered by fuel savings in rail. Overall, there is a net zero impact to the FY22 budget.



Submitted By:

Amanda Riddle

Senior Manager of Budget

Final Review:

Marisa Perry, CPA

Chief Financial Officer/VP of Finance

FY 2023 BUDGET CALENDAR

| | | , | April '22 | 2 | | |
|----|----|----|-----------|-----------|----|----|
| Su | М | Tu | W | Th | F | Sa |
| | | | | | 1 | 2 |
| 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 |
| 10 | 11 | 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 | 16 |
| 17 | 18 | 19 | 20 | 21 | 22 | 23 |
| 24 | 25 | 26 | NTMC B | рста В | 29 | 30 |
| | | | | | | |

April 4: FY23 Goals/Objectives Due (Staff)

| | | | May '22 | 2 | | |
|----|----|----|-----------|-----------|----|----|
| Su | М | Tu | W | Th | F | Sa |
| 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 |
| 8 | 9 | 10 | 11 | 12 | 13 | 14 |
| 15 | 16 | 17 | 18 | 19 | 20 | 21 |
| 22 | 23 | 24 | NTMC B | рста В | 27 | 28 |
| 29 | Η | 31 | | | | |
| | | | | | | |

May 9: FY23 Budget Projections Due (Staff)

*Revenues, Operating & Capital

May 16-20: FY23 Budget Reviews (Staff)

| June '22 | | | | | | |
|----------|----|----|-----------|-----------|----|----|
| Su | М | Tu | W | Th | F | Sa |
| | | | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 |
| 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 11 |
| 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 | DCTA B | 17 | 18 |
| 19 | 20 | 21 | NTMC B | рста В | 24 | 25 |
| 26 | 27 | 28 | 29 | 30 | | |
| | | | | | | |

June 16: Budget Workshop with DCTA Board June 22: Budget Workshop with NTMC Board

| | | | July '22 | | | |
|----|----|----|-----------|-----------|----|----|
| Su | М | Tu | W | Th | F | Sa |
| | | | | | 1 | 2 |
| 3 | π | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 |
| 10 | 11 | 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 | 16 |
| 17 | 18 | 19 | 20 | 21 | 22 | 23 |
| 24 | 25 | 26 | NTMC B | рста В | 29 | 30 |
| 31 | | | | | | |

July 27: NTMC Budget Workshop Part II

*If needed

July 28: DCTA Budget Workshop Part II (9-10am)

*If needed; prior to Board Mtg

| I | | | Α | ugust '2 | 22 | | |
|---|----|----|----|-----------|-----------|----|----|
| | Su | М | Tu | W | Th | F | Sa |
| | | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 |
| | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 11 | 12 | 13 |
| ľ | 14 | 15 | 16 | 17 | 18 | 19 | 20 |
| ľ | 21 | 22 | 23 | NTMC B | рста В | 26 | 27 |
| ĺ | 28 | 29 | 30 | 31 | | | |
| | | | | | | | |

August 24: NTMC BOD FY23 Budget Presentation August 25: DCTA BOD FY23 Budget Presentation & Public Hearing

| | | Com | tombo | . 'aa | | |
|----|----|-----|-----------|-----------|----|----|
| | | Sep | tembei | 22 | | |
| Su | М | Tu | W | Th | F | Sa |
| | | | | 1 | 2 | 3 |
| 4 | I | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 |
| 11 | 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 | 16 | 17 |
| 18 | 19 | 20 | 21 | рста В | 23 | 24 |
| 25 | 26 | 27 | NTMC B | 29 | 30 | |
| | | | | | | |

Sept 22: DCTA BOD FY23 Budget Adoption Sept 28: NTMC BOD FY23 Budget Adoption

| | | 0 | ctober ' | '22 | | |
|----|----|----|-----------|-----------|----|----|
| Su | М | Tu | W | Th | F | Sa |
| | | | | | | 1 |
| 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 |
| 9 | 10 | 11 | 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 |
| 16 | 17 | 18 | 19 | 20 | 21 | 22 |
| 23 | 24 | 25 | NTMC B | рста В | 28 | 29 |
| 30 | 31 | | | | | |

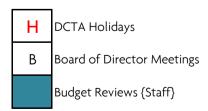
October 14: FY22 Performance Measure Results Due (Staff)

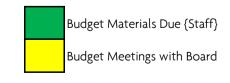
| | | No | vember | · '22 | | |
|----|----|----|--------|-------|----|----|
| Su | М | Tu | W | Th | F | Sa |
| | | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |
| 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 11 | 12 |
| 13 | 14 | 15 | 16 | 17 | 18 | 19 |
| 20 | 21 | 22 | 23 | Н | Н | 26 |
| 27 | 28 | 29 | 30 | | | |
| | | | | | | |

Nov 7: FY23 Budget Document to Graphic Designer



Dec 16: GFOA Budget Award Submission Deadline







February 24,2022

SUBJECT: Monthly Ridership Reports

Ridership Trends

Exhibits 1-6 provide an overview of total monthly ridership trends across all DCTA services—comparing FY19 against FY20, FY21 and FY22. In addition, this month's updated ridership exhibits include visual comparisons of GoZone and Connect ridership plus fixed-route reports by route and type of service.

The summary table below shows that January 2022 month-over-month bus trips increased substantially (49.6%) from December levels as a result of spring semester activities beginning at UNT.

January A-train boardings decreased by approximately 8 percent over the same period. This historic winter decline aligns with prior year trends as seen in Exhibit 1. However, January A-train boardings were still over 19 percent higher than the average monthly A-train monthly boardings in FY21.

Unlinked Passenger Trips

| | 20 | 21 | | 2022 | | |
|-----------|----------|----------|---------|---------------------|--|--|
| | November | December | January | DecJan. % Change | | |
| Bus | 133,347 | 41,749 | 82,856 | 49.6% | | |
| Rail | 15,313 | 12,679 | 11,717 | -8.2% | | |
| GoZone | 36,884 | 39,070 | 48,304 | 19.1% | | |
| Access | 1,758 | 1,693 | 1,533 | -10.4% | | |
| On-Demand | 438 | 435 | 260 | -67.3% | | |

Ridership recovery from the COVID-19 pandemic continues with January 2022 bus ridership being more than 84% above reported January 2021 levels with recorded A-train boardings being about 55 percent above January 2021 levels.

Unlinked Passenger Trips

| | Jan-21 | Jan-22 | % Change |
|-----------|--------|--------|----------|
| Bus | 44,920 | 82,856 | 84% |
| Rail | 7,564 | 11,717 | 55% |
| Access | 1,148 | 1,533 | 34% |
| On-Demand | 552 | 260 | -53% |
| ALL MODES | 54,184 | 96,366 | 78% |



Exhibits

| Exhibit 1: Ridership by Mode – January 2022 |
|---|
| Exhibit 2: A-train Year-Over-Year Ridership Comparison |
| Exhibit 3: Connect and GoZone Ridership by Month and Year |
| Exhibit 4: Fixed-Route Ridership – January 2022 |

Exhibit 5: Connect Ridership Year-Over-Year by Month Exhibit 6: UNT Ridership Year-Over-Year by Month

| Submitted By: | h |
|---------------|--|
| • | |
| | Tim Palermo, Planning & Data Analytics Manager |

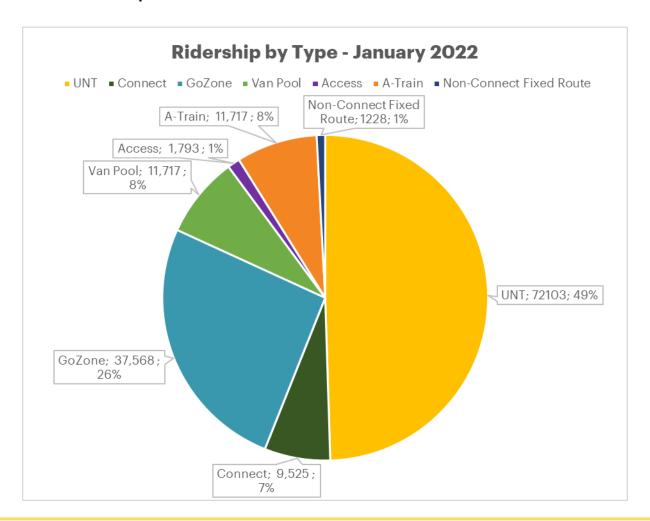
Final Review: ______ Troy Raley, Senior Director – Mobility Services

Final Review:

Rony Philip Sr. Director – Rail Operations

Ridership by Mode – January 2022

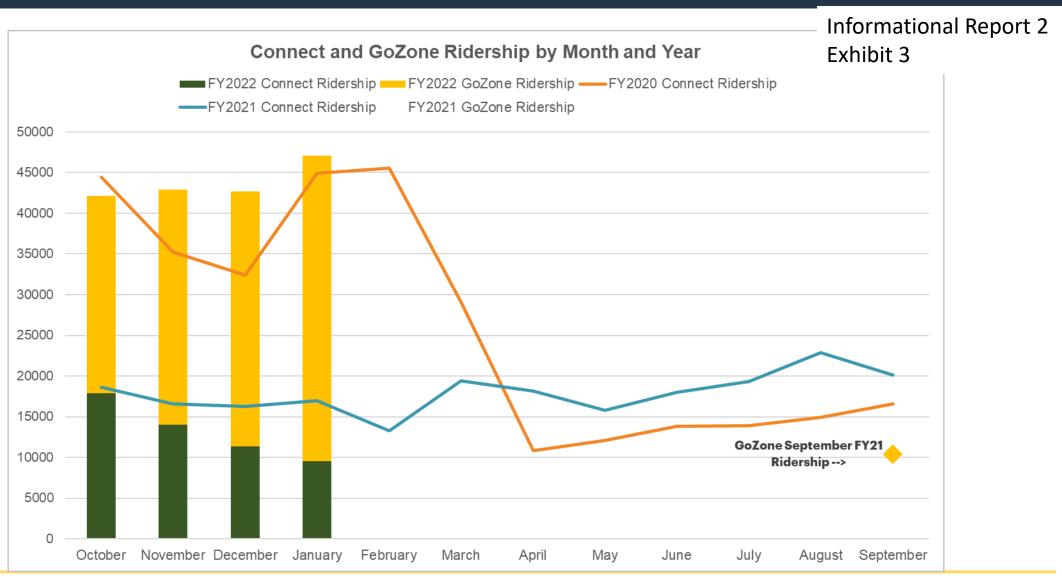
Total January 2022 ridership across all modes of transit within member cities: 145,651



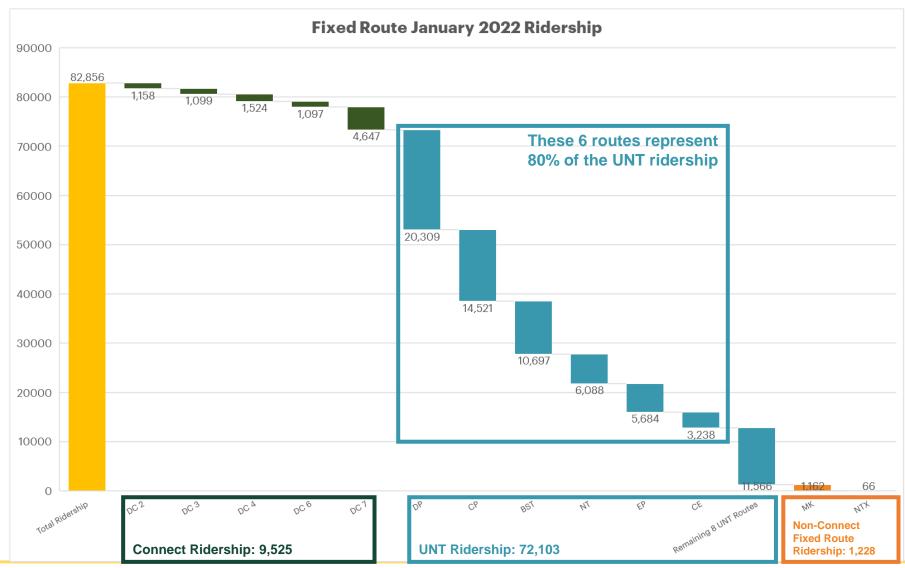
A-Train Year-Over-Year Ridership Comparison



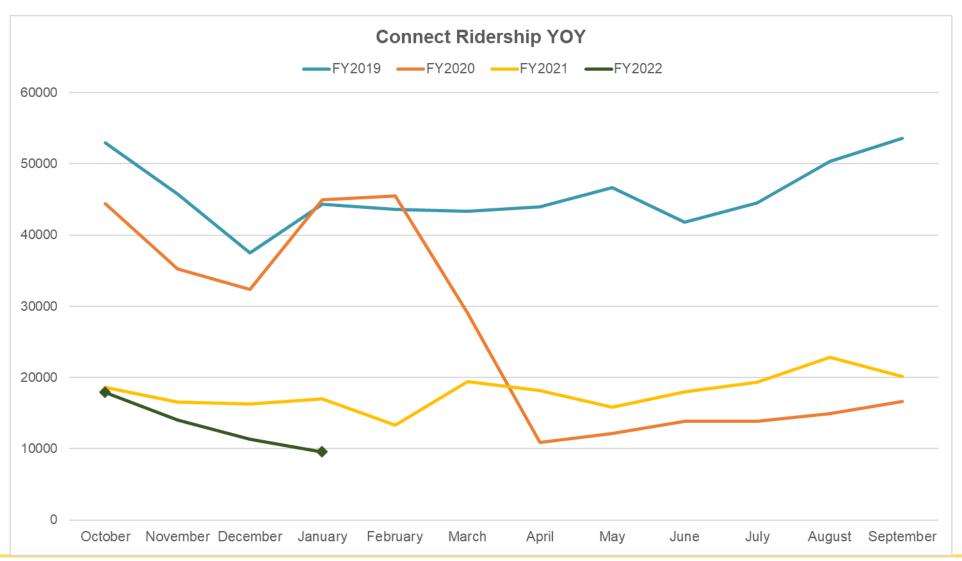
Connect and GoZone Ridership by Month and Year



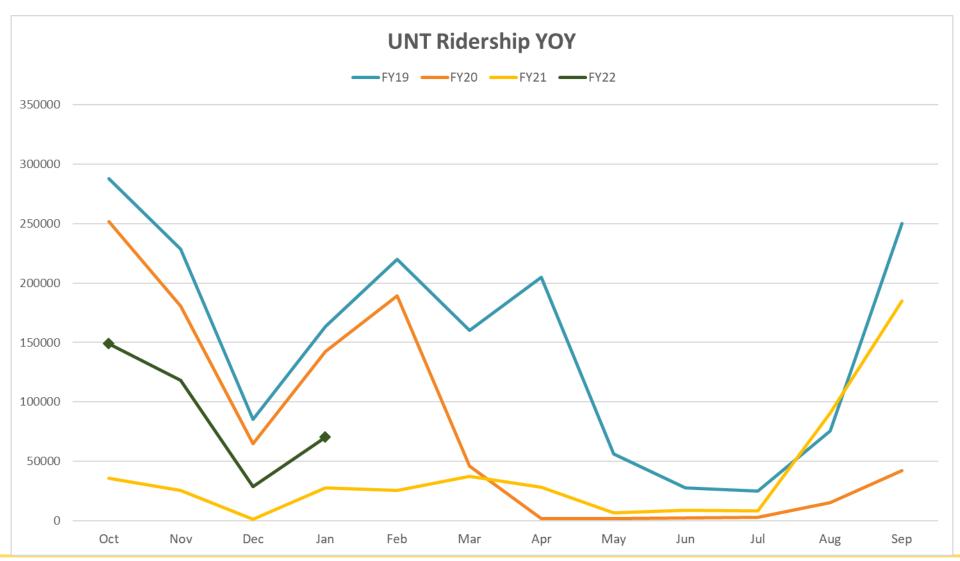
Fixed Route Ridership – January 2022



Connect Ridership YOY by Month



UNT Ridership Year-over-Year by Month





February 24, 2022

SUBJECT: Request for Proposals (RFP) 22-02 State Legislative Consultant

Recommendation

This is an informational item only. Staff will bring an action item to the Board in May for consideration of approval.

Background

DCTA has engaged State Legislative Consultants since 2006 to ensure the protection of the Agency's authority and funding structure. Thousands of bills are filed each session that have the potential to affect the agency either intentionally or unintentionally. During the 87th Texas Legislative Session alone, 9,999 bills were filed. As DCTA continues to evolve as an agency by deploying innovative mobility technologies, entering into public-private partnerships, and encouraging economic development along the A-train corridor, it is critical DCTA's legislative priorities and funding structure are statutorily protected.

Previous Board Activity & Action

There has been no previous Board level activity on this item.

Identified Need

The previous Legislative Consultant contract began on January 1, 2020; however, the contract was terminated for convenience on April 27, 2021. A new State Legislative Consultant is being sought to assist the DCTA Board in crafting the agency's 88th Legislative Agenda prior to the beginning of bill prefiling in November and representing DCTA's interest in the upcoming session. A request for Proposals (RFP) is in development for State Legislative Consultant. Staff plans to bring a final recommendation for award to the Board at the May 26, 2022, meeting.

Financial Impact

The cost for the service is incorporated within the approved FY2022 Budget.

Exhibits

N/A

Submitted By:

Brittney Farr, Director of Government Relations

Final Review:

Geri Osinaike

Geri Osinaike, Senior Procurement Specialist



February 4, 2022

SUBJECT: Community Advisory Committee Recap Report

Recommendation

This is an informational item. No action is required.

Background

DCTA's Community Advisory Committee provides a forum to exchange information between DCTA staff, its passengers, and the community on transit-related issues. Public participation and input are critical as we continue to expand the public transportation opportunities available in the region.

Financial Impact

There is no financial impact

Exhibits

Exhibit 1: Community Advisory Committee Recap Report (January 2022)

May Worthington
Submitted By:

Mary Worthington, Community Relations Manager

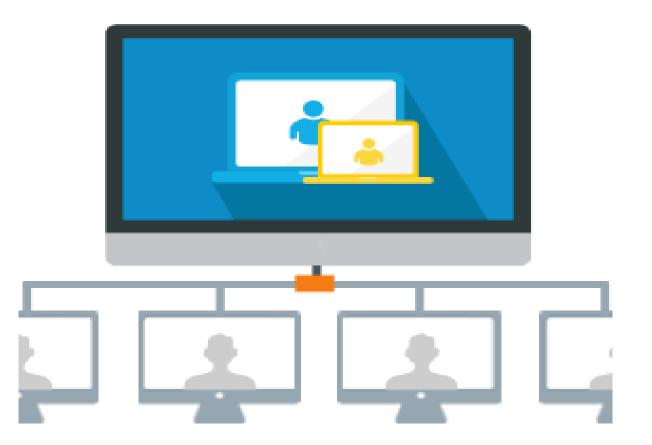
Approval:

Pamela Burns, Director of Public Involvement and Communications



Community Advisory Committee Meeting Recap Report January 26, 2022

MEETING DETAILS





Online meeting held on Wednesday, January 26 at 6 p.m.

This was a joint meeting for both the Denton and Lewisville/Highland Village CAC groups

Community Attendees: 8

DCTA Attendees: 4

PROMOTION

External promotion for each of the Community Advisory Committee meetings are posted to generate new attendance and participation on Facebook, Twitter and Instagram.



DCTA

Purpose of the Community Advisory Committee (CAC)

- Exchanging Information
- Providing public input/feedback
- Sharing DCTA News
- Recruitment and welcoming new members

<u>Air-train Update Provided</u>

- Ridership is up over the previous year
- December total ridership 12,679, compared to 7,564 in December 2020
- Average 509 riders per week, compared to 310 for the same period
- Average Saturday ridership was 321 as compared to 186 in 2020
- Silverline Update Joint Rail Operating Facility

GoZone Updates

- Ridership
- GoZone to Castle Hills Started January 19
- Feedback

Service Updates

UNT Spring Schedule

https://www.dcta.net/passenger-resources/stayinformed/schedule-changes





Campaigns and Events

- Denton Black Film Festival (virtual) January 25 29
- Safety Kids Campaign all of February
- Free Ride Campaign
- Colorpalooza Lewisville Saturday, April 23,2022 CAC Volunteers needed for 2-hour volunteer shifts at DCTA Booth
- Register to Vote partnership with JOLT Initiative
- UNT campus housing fair Wednesday, January 26, 2022



NEXT MEETING



April CAC Meeting



For questions about the upcoming Community Advisory Committee Meeting, or to get more involved in the conversation, please contact:

Mary Worthington, Community Relations Manager, at mworthington@dcta.net



February 24, 2022

SUBJECT: Request for Proposals (RFP) 22-03 Unarmed Uniformed Security Guard Services at Bus Operations Facility and Downtown Denton Transit Center (DDTC)

Recommendation

This is an informational item only. Staff will bring an action item to the Board in April for consideration of approval.

Background

Unarmed uniformed security staff are currently utilized at the Bus Operations and Maintenance (BOM) facility and the Downtown Denton Transit Center (DDTC). The BOM facility is located at 1101 Teasley Lane, Denton, Texas, the DDTC is located at 604 East Hickory Street, Denton, Texas. The security services are in place to monitor the exterior of both facilities after regularly scheduled business hours, scheduled holidays, and to be a presence at the DDTC during operating hours, monitoring both the interior and exterior activities, intervening when necessary if incidents occur.

The current contract has been in place from April 6, 2017, and will expire on June 5, 2022. A request for Proposals (RFP) has been released on BidSync for Unarmed Uniformed Security Services. Staff plans to bring a final recommendation for award to the Board at the April 28, 2022, meeting.

Previous Board Activity & Action

There has been no previous Board level activity on this item.

Identified Need

Security is needed to monitor the Denton facilities and provide a safe environment to the public, Staff, and any on-site Vendors. Suspicious or unlawful activity will be reported by the contractor to Law Enforcement.

Financial Impact

The cost for the service is incorporated within the approved FY2022 Budget.

Exhibits

N/A

Submitted By:

Rusty Comer, Senior Manager of Mobility Services

Final Review:

Cari Cainaika Saniar Brass

Geri Osinaike, Senior Procurement Specialist



February 24, 2022

SUBJECT: Memorandum of Understanding (MOU) with Dallas Area Rapid Transit (DART) and Trinity Metro for Rail Liability Insurance Administration

Recommendation

This item is presented for informational purposes only. No action is required. A final draft MOU will be presented to the Board for approval prior to execution.

Background

In accordance with the DART/DCTA interlocal agreement (ILA) regarding DCTA's ability to operate rail service on DART's corridor, DCTA is required to maintain a minimum of \$125 million in rail operations liability insurance coverage.

Due to projected increase in premiums and the difficulty in placing coverage due to capacity constraints, DCTA worked with DART to be added to DART's rail liability program as an Insured, along with TEXRail and Grapevine Vintage Railroad, which was more cost effective than each agency securing its own coverage. The current policy provides coverage for November 1, 2021 through October 31, 2022.

Staff of DCTA, DART, and Trinity Metro are reviewing a draft MOU that outlines the principles and understanding of the rail liability insurance pooled program. Each agency will manage its own claims and/or lawsuits within the policy self-insured retention of \$3 million. The pooled program is currently administered by DART; DCTA provides all requested information and documents to DART, and DART works directly with its benefit broker to secure coverage for all agencies participating in the pooled program. The draft MOU includes an administrative fee payable to DART by DCTA and Trinity Metro, in addition to each agency's share of the premiums.

Previous Board Activity & Action

• September 23, 2021 – The Board approved payment not to exceed \$686,000 to DART for DCTA's portion of excess rail liability insurance for November 1, 2021 through October 31, 2022.

Identified Need

DCTA is contractually required to maintain rail operations liability insurance with a minimum limit of \$125 million.

Financial Impact

Staff anticipates the proposed administrative fee can be accommodated within the existing FY22 budget.

Exhibits

N/A

Submitted By:

Chief Financial Officer/VP of Finance



February 24, 2022

SUBJECT: Extension of 17-03 On-Demand Rideshare Services and 17-27 On-Call Taxi and Non-emergency Transportation Services Contracts

Recommendation

This is an informational report. No Board action is required at this time.

Background

The current contracts for these services are set to expire in 2022. Staff is requesting an extension for these contracts through September 30, 2023, to allow sufficient time to rebid the services, due to staff shortages.

Previous Board Activity & Action

The On Demand Rideshare Services was originally presented to the Board in March 2017 and was approved. The On-Call Taxi and Non-emergency Transportation Services was originally presented to the Board in August 2017 and was approved.

Identified Need

Public transit is undergoing a paradigm shift from a service-oriented perspective to a rider-oriented service approach. This new paradigm is referred to as Mobility on Demand (MOD) and seeks to make public transit more accessible and appealing to its current and future customers by incorporating mobile technology and alternative transportation modes.

Partnering with third party providers to implement and continue these On-Demand services enables DCTA the opportunity to enhance the existing services by improving connections to public transit, as well as connections to private transportation service providers within its service area, to improve mobility for all customers.

As a result, DCTA seeks to continue to provide Mobility On-Demand services through this contract to low density areas, address the first/last mile connection, provide real time travel options to passengers, and offer alternatives to site specific shuttles to local employment centers.

DCTA has successfully partnered with these vendors since 2017 and seeks to extend the existing contract through September 30, 2023, to offer discounted fare for customer requested trips.

Financial Impact

Services provided through the contract are subsidized by non-member cities at 100% plus our agreed upon Administrative Fee as defined by DCTA's Administrative Fee Policy.

Exhibits

N/A



Submitted By: \

Rusty Comer, Senior Manager of Mobility Services

Final Review:

Brandy Hazel, Manager of Contracts & Procurement